

# Audio, video and similar electronic apparatus — Safety requirements

The European Standard EN 60065:2002, with the incorporation of amendment A1:2006, has the status of a British Standard

ICS 97.020

# National foreword

This British Standard is the official English language version of EN 60065:2002, including amendment A1:2006. It was derived by CENELEC from IEC 60065:2001, including Corrigendum August 2002 and amendment 1:2005. It supersedes BS EN 60065:1998 which will be withdrawn on 2007-03-01 and BS EN 60491:1997.

The start and finish of text introduced or altered by amendment is indicated in the text by tags **A1** **A1**. Tags indicating changes to IEC text carry the number of the IEC amendment. For example, text altered by IEC amendment 1 is indicated in the text by **A1** **A1**.

The CENELEC common modifications have been implemented at the appropriate places in the text. The start and finish of each common modification is indicated in the text by tags **C** **C**. Where a common modification has been introduced by amendment, the tags carry the number of the amendment. For example, the common modifications introduced by CENELEC amendment A11 are indicated by **C11** **C11**.

The UK participation in its preparation was entrusted to Technical Committee EPL/108, Safety of electronic equipment within the field of audio/video, information technology and communication technology, which has the responsibility to:

- aid enquirers to understand the text;
- present to the responsible international/European committee any enquiries on the interpretation, or proposals for change, and keep UK interests informed;
- monitor related international and European developments and promulgate them in the UK.

A list of organizations represented on this committee can be obtained on request to its secretary.

## Cross-references

The British Standards which implement international or European publications referred to in this document may be found in the *BSI Catalogue* under the section entitled “International Standards Correspondence Index”, or by using the “Search” facility of the *BSI Electronic Catalogue* or of British Standards Online.

This publication does not purport to include all the necessary provisions of a contract. Users are responsible for its correct application.

**Compliance with a British Standard does not of itself confer immunity from legal obligations.**

## Summary of pages

This document comprises a front cover, an inside front cover, the EN title page, pages 2 to 176, an inside back cover and a back cover.

The BSI copyright notice displayed in this document indicates when the document was last issued.

## Amendments issued since publication

Amd. No.	Date	Comments
14137 Corrigendum No. 1	14 February 2003	Corrections to Table 3, <b>14.3.5.2</b> , and paragraph 2 of Annex B
16501	31 October 2006	See national foreword

This British Standard, having been prepared under the direction of the Electrotechnical Sector Policy and Strategy Committee, was published under the authority of the Standards Policy and Strategy Committee on 14 June 2002

© BSI 2006

ISBN 0 580 39800 5

EUROPEAN STANDARD  
NORME EUROPÉENNE  
EUROPÄISCHE NORM

**EN 60065**

May 2002

**+ A1**

May 2006

ICS 97.020

Supersedes EN 60065:1998 and EN 60491:1995

English version

**Audio, video and similar electronic apparatus –  
Safety requirements**  
(IEC 60065:2001, modified)

Appareils audio, vidéo et appareils  
électroniques analogues –  
Exigences de sécurité  
(CEI 60065:2001, modifiée)

Audio-, Video- und ähnliche elektronische  
Geräte –  
Sicherheitsanforderungen  
(IEC 60065:2001, modifiziert)

This European Standard was approved by CENELEC on 2002-03-01. CENELEC members are bound to comply with the CEN/CENELEC Internal Regulations which stipulate the conditions for giving this European Standard the status of a national standard without any alteration.

Up-to-date lists and bibliographical references concerning such national standards may be obtained on application to the Central Secretariat or to any CENELEC member.

This European Standard exists in three official versions (English, French, German). A version in any other language made by translation under the responsibility of a CENELEC member into its own language and notified to the Central Secretariat has the same status as the official versions.

CENELEC members are the national electrotechnical committees of Austria, Belgium, Czech Republic, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, Malta, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland and United Kingdom.

**CENELEC**

European Committee for Electrotechnical Standardization  
Comité Européen de Normalisation Electrotechnique  
Europäisches Komitee für Elektrotechnische Normung

**Central Secretariat: rue de Stassart 35, B - 1050 Brussels**

## Foreword

Following BT decision D105/051 the text of future edition 7 of the International Standard IEC 60065 (92/85/FDIS), prepared by IEC TC 92, Safety of audio, video and similar electronic equipment, together with common modifications prepared by the Technical Committee CENELEC TC 92, Safety of audio, video and similar electronic equipment, was submitted to the formal vote and was approved by CENELEC as EN 60065 on 2002-03-01.

This European Standard supersedes EN 60065:1998 + corrigendum June 1999.

The following dates were fixed:

- latest date by which the EN has to be implemented  
at national level by publication of an identical  
national standard or by endorsement (dop) 2003-03-01
- latest date by which the national standards  
conflicting with the EN have to be withdrawn (dow) 2007-03-01

Annexes designated "normative" are part of the body of the standard.

Annexes designated "informative" are given for information only.

In this standard, annexes A to K, ZA and ZB are normative; annexes M, N and ZC are informative.

Annexes ZA, ZB and ZC have been added by CENELEC

---

## Endorsement notice

The text of the International Standard IEC 60065:2001 was approved by CENELEC as a European Standard with agreed common modifications.

## Foreword to amendment A1

The text of document 108/136/FDIS, future amendment 1 to IEC 60065:2001, prepared by IEC TC 108, Safety of electronic equipment within the field of audio/video, information technology and communication technology, was submitted to the IEC-CENELEC parallel vote.

A draft amendment to EN 60065:2002, prepared by the Technical Committee CENELEC TC 108, Safety of electronic equipment within the fields of audio/video, information technology and communication technology, was submitted to the formal vote.

The two documents together were ratified by CENELEC as amendment A1 to EN 60065:2002 on 2005-12-01.

Annex L of this amendment A1 to EN 60065:2002 supersedes EN 60491:1995.

The following dates were fixed:

- latest date by which the amendment has to be implemented  
at national level by publication of an identical  
national standard or by endorsement (dop) 2006-12-01
- latest date by which the national standards conflicting  
with the amendment have to be withdrawn (dow) 2008-12-01

Subclauses, tables and figures which are additional to those in IEC 60065 are prefixed "Z".

## CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION.....	6
1 General .....	9
1.1 Scope.....	9
1.2 Normative references .....	11
2 Definitions .....	14
3 General requirements .....	24
4 General test conditions .....	24
5 Marking and instructions .....	31
6 Hazardous radiations .....	35
7 Heating under normal operating conditions.....	37
8 Constructional requirements with regard to the protection against electric shock .....	41
9 Electric shock hazard under normal operating conditions.....	50
10 Insulation requirements.....	54
11 Fault conditions .....	58
12 Mechanical strength.....	61
13 CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES.....	67
14 Components .....	79
15 TERMINALS .....	96
16 External flexible cords.....	103
17 Electrical connections and mechanical fixings .....	106
18 Mechanical strength of picture tubes and protection against the effects of implosion.....	109
19 Stability and mechanical hazards .....	111
20 Resistance to fire.....	113
Annex A (normative) Additional requirements for apparatus with protection against splashing water .....	130
Annex B (normative) Apparatus to be connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS .....	131
Annex C (normative) Band-pass filter for wide-band noise measurement .....	133
Annex D (normative) Measuring network for TOUCH CURRENTS.....	134
Annex E (normative) Measurement of CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES.....	135
Annex F (normative) Table of electrochemical potentials .....	139
Annex G (normative) Flammability test methods .....	140
Annex H (normative) Insulated winding wires for use without interleaved insulation .....	143
Annex J (normative) Alternative method for determining minimum CLEARANCES.....	146
Annex K (normative) Impulse test generators .....	152
Annex L (normative) Additional requirements for electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes .....	153
Annex M (informative) Examples of requirements for quality control programmes .....	157
Annex N (informative) ROUTINE TEST.....	159

Annex ZA (normative) Other international publications quoted in this standard with the references of the relevant European publications .....	163
Annex ZB (normative) Special national conditions .....	168
Annex ZC (informative) A-deviations .....	172
Bibliography .....	175
Figure 1 – Test circuit for fault conditions .....	117
Figure 2 – Example of an assessment of REINFORCED INSULATION .....	117
Figure 3 – Example of ACCESSIBLE parts .....	118
Figure 4 – Test hook .....	119
Figure 5a – Surge test – Test circuit .....	119
Figure 5b – Surge test – Example of a switch to be used in the test circuit .....	120
Figure 6 – Dielectric strength test instrument .....	121
Figure 7 – Test voltages .....	122
Figure 8 – Impact test using a steel ball .....	122
Figure 9 – Test plug for mechanical tests on antenna coaxial sockets .....	123
Figure 10 – Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES ON PRINTED BOARDS .....	124
Figure 11 – Test apparatus for devices forming a part of the MAINS plug .....	125
Figure 12 – Scratch patterns for implosion test .....	126
Figure 13 – Distances from a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE and an example for the design of barriers .....	127
Figure 14 – Mandrel .....	128
Figure 15 – Initial position of mandrel .....	128
Figure 16 – Final position of mandrel .....	128
Figure 17 – Position of metal foil on insulating material .....	129
Figure C.1 – Band-pass filter for wide-band noise measurement (amplitude/frequency response limits) .....	133
Figure D.1 – Measuring network for TOUCH CURRENTS according to IEC 60990 .....	134
Figure E.1 – Narrow groove .....	135
Figure E.2 – Wide groove .....	136
Figure E.3 – V-shaped groove .....	136
Figure E.4 – Rib .....	136
Figure E.5 – Uncemented joint with narrow groove .....	136
Figure E.6 – Uncemented joint with wide groove .....	137
Figure E.7 – Uncemented joint with narrow and wide grooves .....	137
Figure E.8 – Intervening, unconnected conductive part .....	137
Figure E.9 – Narrow recess .....	138
Figure E.10 – Wide recess .....	138
Figure K.1 – Impulse generating circuit .....	152

Table 1 – Voltage ranges of TNV circuits .....	19
Table 2 – Test power supply .....	28
Table 3 – Permissible temperature rise of parts of the apparatus .....	39
Table 4 – Test temperature and testing time (in days) per cycle .....	47
Table 5 – Test voltages for dielectric strength test and values for insulation resistance .....	57
Table 6 – Impact test on the enclosure of apparatus .....	63
Table 7 – Torque values for end-piece test .....	66
Table 8 – Minimum CLEARANCES for insulation in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and between such circuits and circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS .....	70
Table 9 – Additional CLEARANCES for insulation in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS with peak OPERATING VOLTAGES exceeding the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage and between such circuits and circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS .....	71
Table 10 – Minimum CLEARANCES in circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS .....	73
Table 11 – Minimum CREEPAGE DISTANCES .....	76
Table 12 – Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES (enclosed, enveloped or hermetically sealed constructions) .....	78
Table 13 – Flammability category related to distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES .....	82
Table 14 – Peak surge current .....	93
Table 15 – Nominal cross-sectional area to be accepted by TERMINALS .....	100
Table 16 – Minimum nominal thread diameter .....	100
Table 17 – Pull force on pins .....	103
Table 18 – Nominal cross-sectional areas of external flexible cords .....	103
Table 19 – Mass and pulley diameter for stress test .....	104
Table 20 – Torque to be applied to screws .....	107
Table 21 – Distances from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES and consequential flammability categories .....	115
Table B.1 – Separation of TNV circuits .....	132
Table E.1 – Value of X .....	135
Table H.1 – Mandrel diameter .....	143
Table H.2 – Oven temperature .....	144
Table J.1 – MAINS transient voltages .....	147
Table J.2 – Minimum CLEARANCES .....	150
Table K.1 – Component values for impulse generating circuits .....	152
Table M.1 – Rules for sampling and inspection – Reduced CLEARANCES .....	158
Table N.1 – Test voltage .....	161

## INTRODUCTION

### Principles of safety

#### *General*

This introduction is intended to provide an appreciation of the principles on which the requirements of this standard are based. Such an understanding is essential in order that safe apparatus can be designed and manufactured.

The requirements of this standard are intended to provide protection to persons as well as to the surroundings of the apparatus.

Attention is drawn to the principle that the requirements, which are standardized, are the minimum considered necessary to establish a satisfactory level of safety.

Further development in techniques and technologies may entail the need for future modification of this standard.

**NOTE** The expression "protection to the surroundings of the apparatus" implies that this protection should also include protection of the natural environment in which the apparatus is intended to be used, taking into account the life cycle of the apparatus, i.e. manufacturing, use, maintenance, disposal and possible end-of-life recycling of parts of the apparatus.

#### *Hazards*

The application of this standard is intended to prevent injury or damage due to the following hazards:

- electric shock;
- excessive temperatures;
- radiation;
- implosion;
- mechanical hazards;
- fire.

#### *Electric shock*

Electric shock is due to current passing through the human body. Currents of the order of a milliampere can cause a reaction in persons in good health and may cause secondary risks due to involuntary reaction. Higher currents can have more damaging effects. Voltages below certain limits are generally regarded as not dangerous under specified conditions. In order to provide protection against the possibility of higher voltages appearing on parts which may be touched or handled, such parts are either earthed or adequately insulated.

For parts which can be touched, two levels of protection are normally provided to prevent electric shock caused by a fault. Thus a single fault and any consequential faults will not create a hazard. The provision of additional protective measures, such as supplementary insulation or protective earthing, is not considered a substitute for, or a relief from, properly designed basic insulation.



## Cause

Contacts with parts normally at hazardous voltage.

Breakdown of insulation between parts normally at hazardous voltage and accessible parts.

Breakdown of insulation between parts normally at hazardous voltage and circuits normally at non-hazardous voltages, thereby putting accessible parts and terminals at hazardous voltage.

Touch current from parts at hazardous voltage through the human body.  
(Touch current can include current due to RFI filter components connected between mains supply circuits and accessible parts or terminals.)

## Prevention

Prevent access to parts at hazardous voltage by fixed or locked covers, interlocks, etc.  
Discharge capacitors at hazardous voltages.

Either use double or reinforced insulation between parts normally at hazardous voltages and accessible parts so that breakdown is not likely to occur, or connect accessible conductive parts to protective earth so that the voltage which can develop is limited to a safe value. The insulations shall have adequate mechanical and electrical strength.

Segregate hazardous and non-hazardous voltage circuits either by double or reinforced insulation so that breakdown is not likely to occur, or by a protective earthed screen, or connect the circuit normally at non-hazardous voltage to protective earth, so that the voltage which can develop is limited to a safe value.

Limit touch current to a safe value or provide a protective earthing connection to the accessible parts.

## *Excessive temperatures*

Requirements are included to prevent injury due to excessive temperatures of accessible parts, to prevent damaging of insulation due to excessive internal temperatures, and to prevent mechanical instability due to excessive temperatures developed inside the apparatus.

## *Radiation*

Requirements are included to prevent injury due to excessive energy levels of ionizing and laser radiation, for example by limiting the radiation to non-hazardous values.

## *Implosion*

Requirements are included to prevent injury due to implosion of picture tubes.

### *Mechanical hazards*

Requirements are included to ensure that the apparatus and its parts have adequate mechanical strength and stability, to avoid the presence of sharp edges and to provide guarding or interlocking of dangerous moving parts.

### *Fire*

A fire can result from

- overloads;
- component failure;
- insulation breakdown;
- bad connections;
- arcing.

Requirements are included to prevent any fire which originates within the apparatus from spreading beyond the immediate vicinity of the source of the fire or from causing damage to the surroundings of the apparatus.

The following preventive measures are recommended:

- the use of suitable components and subassemblies;
- the avoidance of excessive temperatures which might cause ignition under normal or fault conditions;
- the use of measures to eliminate potential ignition sources such as inadequate contacts, bad connections, interruptions;
- the limitation of the quantity of combustible material used;
- the control of the position of combustible materials in relation to potential ignition sources;
- the use of materials with high resistance to fire in the vicinity of potential ignition sources;
- the use of encapsulation or barriers to limit the spread of fire within the apparatus;
- the use of suitable fire retardant materials for the enclosure.

# AUDIO, VIDEO AND SIMILAR ELECTRONIC APPARATUS – SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

## 1 General

### 1.1 Scope

**1.1.1** This International Safety Standard applies to electronic apparatus designed to be fed from the MAINS, from a SUPPLY APPARATUS, from batteries or from REMOTE POWER FEEDING and intended for reception, generation, recording or reproduction respectively of audio, video and associated signals. It also applies to apparatus designed to be used exclusively in combination with the above-mentioned apparatus.

This standard primarily concerns apparatus intended for household and similar general use but which may also be used in places of public assembly such as schools, theatres, places of worship and the workplace. PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS intended for use as described above is also covered unless falling specifically within the scope of other standards.

This standard concerns only safety aspects of the above apparatus; it does not concern other matters, such as style or performance.

This standard applies to the above-mentioned apparatus, if designed to be connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK or similar network, for example by means of an integrated modem.

Some examples of apparatus within the scope of this standard are:

- receiving apparatus and amplifiers for sound and/or vision;
- independent LOAD TRANSDUCERS and SOURCE TRANSDUCERS;
- SUPPLY APPARATUS intended to supply other apparatus covered by the scope of this standard;
- ELECTRONIC MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS, and electronic accessories such as rhythm generators, tone generators, music tuners and the like for use with electronic or non-electronic musical instruments;
- audio and/or video educational apparatus;
- video projectors;

NOTE 1 Film projectors, slide projectors, overhead projectors are covered by IEC 60335-2-56 [5]<sup>1)</sup>

- video cameras and video monitors;
- video games and flipper games;

NOTE 2 Video and flipper games for commercial use are covered by IEC 60335-2-82 [6]

- juke boxes;
- electronic gaming and scoring machines;

NOTE 3 Electronic gaming and scoring machines for commercial use are covered by IEC 60335-2-82 [6]

**A1)** – electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes (see Annex L). **A1)**

<sup>1)</sup> Figures in square brackets refer to the bibliography.

- teletext equipment;
- record and optical disc players;
- tape and optical disc recorders;
- antenna signal converters and amplifiers;
- antenna positioners;
- Citizen's Band apparatus;
- apparatus for IMAGERY;
- electronic light effect apparatus;
- apparatus for use in alarm systems;
- intercommunication apparatus, using low voltage MAINS as the transmission medium;
- cable head-end receivers;
- multimedia apparatus;

NOTE 4 The requirements of IEC 60950 may also be used to meet the requirements for safety of multi media apparatus (see also IEC Guide 112 [16])

- professional general use amplifiers, record or disc players, tape players, recorders, and public address systems;
- professional sound/video systems.

**1.1.2** This standard applies to apparatus with a RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE not exceeding

- 250 V a.c. single phase or d.c. supply;
- 433 V a.c. in the case of apparatus for connection to a supply other than single-phase.

**1.1.3** This standard applies to apparatus for use at altitudes not exceeding 2 000 m above sea level, primarily in dry locations and in regions with moderate or tropical climates.

For apparatus with protection against splashing water, additional requirements are given in annex A.

For apparatus to be connected to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS, additional requirements are given in annex B.

For apparatus intended to be used in vehicles, ships or aircraft, or at altitudes exceeding 2 000 m above sea level, additional requirements may be necessary.

NOTE See table A.2 of IEC 60664-1.

Requirements, additional to those specified in this standard, may be necessary for apparatus intended for special conditions of use.

**1.1.4** For apparatus designed to be fed from the MAINS, this standard applies to apparatus intended to be connected to a MAINS supply with transient overvoltages not exceeding overvoltage category II according to IEC 60664-1.

For apparatus subject to transient overvoltages exceeding those for overvoltage category II, additional protection may be necessary in the MAINS supply of the apparatus.

## 1.2 Normative references

The following normative documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this International Standard. For dated references, subsequent amendments to, or revisions of, any of these publications do not apply. However, parties to agreements based on this International Standard are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the normative documents indicated below. For undated references, the latest edition of the normative document referred to applies. Members of IEC and ISO maintain registers of currently valid International Standards.

IEC 60027 (all parts), *Letter symbols to be used in electrical technology*

IEC 60038:1983, *IEC standard voltages*

■<sub>A1</sub> Amendment 1 (1994)

Amendment 2 (1997) ■<sub>A1</sub>

■<sub>A1</sub> IEC 60068-2-78:2001, *Environmental testing – Part 2: Tests – Test Cab: Damp heat, steady state*

IEC 60086-4:2000, *Primary batteries – Part 4: Safety of lithium batteries* ■<sub>A1</sub>

IEC 60068-2-6:1995, *Environmental testing – Part 2: Tests – Test Fc: Vibration (sinusoidal)*

IEC 60068-2-32:1975, *Environmental testing – Part 2: Tests – Test Ed: Free fall (Procedure 2)*

IEC 60068-2-75:1997, *Environmental testing – Part 2-75: Tests – Test Eh: Hammer tests*

IEC 60085: ■<sub>A1</sub> 2004 ■<sub>A1</sub>, *Thermal evaluation and classification of electrical insulation*

IEC 60112: ■<sub>A1</sub> 2003 ■<sub>A1</sub>, *Method for determining the comparative and the proof tracking indices of solid insulating materials under moist conditions*

IEC 60127 (all parts), *Miniature fuses*

IEC 60167:1964, *Methods of test for the determination of the insulation resistance of solid insulating materials*

IEC 60216 (all parts), *Guide for the determination of thermal endurance properties of electrical insulating materials*

IEC 60227 (all parts), *Polyvinyl chloride insulated cables of rated voltages up to and including 450/750 V*

IEC 60245 (all parts), *Rubber insulated cables – Rated voltages up to and including 450/750 V*

IEC 60249-2 (all specifications), *Base materials for printed circuits – Part 2: Specifications*



IEC 60268-1:1985, *Sound system equipment – Part 1: General*

IEC 60317 (all parts), *Specifications for particular types of winding wires*

IEC 60320 (all parts), *Appliance couplers for household and similar general purposes*

IEC 60335-1:2001, *Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety – Part 1: General requirements*

■<sub>A1</sub> Amendment 1 (2004) ■<sub>A1</sub>

IEC 60384-1:  1999 , *Fixed capacitors for use in electronic equipment – Part 1: Generic specification*



IEC 60384-14:1993, *Fixed capacitors for use in electronic equipment – Part 14: Sectional specification: Fixed capacitors for electromagnetic interference suppression and connection to the supply mains*

Amendment 1 (1995)


IEC 60417 (all parts), *Graphical symbols for use on equipment*


IEC 60454 (all parts), *Specifications for pressure-sensitive adhesive tapes for electrical purposes*

IEC 60529:1989, *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)*



 Amendment 1 (1999) 

IEC 60664-1:1992, *Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems – Part 1: Principles, requirements and tests*

 Amendment 1 (2000)



Amendment 2 (2002) 

IEC 60664-3:  2003 , *Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems – Part 3: Use of coatings to achieve insulation coordination of printed board assemblies*

IEC 60691:  2002 , *Thermal links – Requirements and application guide*

IEC 60695-2-2:1991, *Fire hazard testing – Part 2: Test methods – Section 2: Needle-flame test*

IEC 60695-11-10:1999, *Fire hazard testing – Part 11-10: Test flames – 50 W horizontal and vertical flame test methods*

 Amendment 1 (2003) 

IEC 60707:1999, *Flammability of solid non-metallic materials when exposed to flame sources – List of test methods*



IEC 60730 (all parts), *Automatic electrical controls for household and similar use*

IEC 60825-1:1993, *Safety of laser products – Part 1: Equipment classification, requirements and user's guide*<sup>1)</sup>

Amendment 1 (1997)


Amendment 2 (2001)

IEC 60851-3:1996, *Methods of test for winding wires – Part 3: Mechanical properties*

 Amendment 1 (1997) 

IEC 60851-5:1996, *Methods of test for winding wires – Part 5: Electrical properties*

 Amendment 1 (1997)

Amendment 2 (2004) 

IEC 60851-6:1996, *Methods of test for winding wires – Part 6: Thermal properties*

IEC 60884 (all parts), *Plugs and socket-outlets for household and similar purposes*

IEC 60885-1:1987, *Electrical test methods for electric cables – Part 1: Electrical tests for cables, cords and wires for voltages up to and including 450/750 V*

IEC 60906 (all parts), *IEC system of plugs and socket-outlets for household and similar purposes*

IEC 60950:1999, *Safety of information technology equipment*

IEC 60990:1999, *Methods of measurement of touch current and protective conductor current*

1) There exists a consolidated edition 1.1 (1998) that includes edition 1.0 and its amendment 1.

IEC 60998-2-2:  $\text{A1}$  2002  $\text{A1}$ , *Connecting devices for low-voltage circuits for household and similar purposes – Part 2-2: Particular requirements for connecting devices as separate entities with screwless-type clamping units*

IEC 60999-1:1999, *Connecting devices – Electrical copper conductors – Safety requirements for screw-type and screwless-type clamping units – Part 1: General requirements and particular requirements for clamping units for conductors from 0,2 mm<sup>2</sup> up to 35 mm<sup>2</sup> (included)*

IEC 61032:1997, *Protection of persons and equipment by enclosures – Probes for verification*

IEC 61051-2:1991, *Varistors for use in electronic equipment – Part 2: Sectional specification for surge suppression varistors*

IEC 61058-1:  $\text{A1}$  2000  $\text{A1}$ , *Switches for appliances – Part 1: General requirements*

IEC/TR2 61149:1995, *Guide for safe handling and operation of mobile radio equipment*

IEC 61260:1995, *Electroacoustics – Octave-band and fractional-octave-band filters*

IEC 61293:1994, *Marking of electrical equipment with ratings related to electrical supply – Safety requirements*

IEC 61558-1:1997, *Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar – Part 1: General requirements and tests* <sup>1)</sup>  
Amendment 1 (1998)

IEC 61558-2-17:1997, *Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar – Part 2-17: Particular requirements for transformers for switch mode power supplies*

IEC 61965:  $\text{A1}$  2003  $\text{A1}$ , *Mechanical safety of cathode ray tubes*

IEC 62151:2000, *Safety of equipment electrically connected to a telecommunication network*

IEC Guide 104:1997, *The preparation of safety publications and the use of basic safety publications and group safety publications*

ISO 261:1973, *ISO general purpose metric screw threads – General plan*

ISO 262:1973, *ISO general-purpose metric screw threads – Selected sizes for screws, bolts and nuts*

ISO 306:1994, *Plastics – Thermoplastic materials – Determination of Vicat softening temperature (VST)*

ISO 7000:1989, *Graphical symbols for use on equipment – Index and synopsis*

ITU-T Recommendation K17:1988, *Tests on power-fed repeaters using solid-state devices in order to check the arrangements for protection from external interference*

ITU-T Recommendation K21:1996, *Resistibility of telecommunication equipment installed in customer's premises to overvoltages and overcurrents*

<sup>1)</sup> There exists a consolidated edition 1.1 (1998) that includes edition 1.0 and its amendment 1.

**2 Definitions**

For the purpose of this International Standard, the following definitions apply.

<b>2.1 Definitions in alphabetical order</b>	<b>Subclause</b>
ACCESSIBLE .....	2.8.3
AUDIO AMPLIFIER.....	2.2.1
AVAILABLE POWER.....	2.3.7
BASIC INSULATION .....	2.6.3
BY HAND.....	2.8.4
CLASS I .....	2.6.1
CLASS II .....	2.6.2
CLEARANCE .....	2.6.11
CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.....	2.4.4
CONDUCTIVE PATTERN .....	2.7.13
CREEPAGE DISTANCE .....	2.6.12
DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS .....	2.4.3
DOUBLE INSULATION .....	2.6.4
ELECTRONIC MUSICAL INSTRUMENT .....	2.2.2
FIRE ENCLOSURE.....	2.8.10
HAZARDOUS LIVE.....	2.6.10
IMAGERY .....	2.2.8
INSTRUCTED PERSON.....	2.8.6
ISOLATING TRANSFORMER .....	2.7.1
LASER .....	2.2.7
LASER SYSTEM.....	2.2.6
LOAD TRANSDUCER .....	2.5.4
MAINS .....	2.4.1
MAINS SWITCH .....	2.7.11
MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCH .....	2.7.10
MICRO-DISCONNECTION .....	2.7.7
NOISE SIGNAL .....	2.5.2
NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER .....	2.3.4
OPERATING VOLTAGE.....	2.3.2
PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS.....	2.4.2
PINK NOISE .....	2.5.1
PORTABLE APPARATUS.....	2.2.10
POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE.....	2.8.11
PRINTED BOARD .....	2.7.12
PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS.....	2.2.12
PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL .....	2.4.6
PROTECTIVE SCREENING .....	2.6.8
PROTECTIVE SEPARATION .....	2.6.7
PTC THERMISTOR .....	2.7.8
RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION .....	2.3.6
RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE .....	2.3.5
RATED POWER CONSUMPTION.....	2.3.10
RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE .....	2.3.1
REINFORCED INSULATION .....	2.6.6
REMOTE CONTROL .....	2.2.9
REMOTE POWER FEEDING.....	2.4.8
REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE.....	2.3.8
RIPPLE FREE.....	2.3.3
ROUTINE TEST .....	2.8.2
SAFETY INTERLOCK .....	2.7.9
SEPARATING TRANSFORMER .....	2.7.2
SKILLED PERSON .....	2.8.5
SOURCE TRANSDUCER .....	2.5.3



SPECIAL BATTERY.....	2.7.14
SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS.....	2.2.5
STAND-BY.....	2.8.8
SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.....	2.6.5
SUPPLY APPARATUS.....	2.2.3
SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE.....	2.2.4
TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK.....	2.4.7
TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE.....	2.3.9
TERMINAL.....	2.4.5
THERMAL CUT-OUT.....	2.7.4
THERMAL LINK.....	2.7.5
THERMAL RELEASE.....	2.7.3
TNV CIRCUIT.....	2.4.9
TNV-0 CIRCUIT.....	2.4.10
TNV-1 CIRCUIT.....	2.4.11
TNV-2 CIRCUIT.....	2.4.12
TNV-3 CIRCUIT.....	2.4.13
TOUCH CURRENT.....	2.6.9
TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS.....	2.2.11
TRIP-FREE.....	2.7.6
TYPE TEST.....	2.8.1
USER.....	2.8.7
WOOD-BASED MATERIAL.....	2.8.9

## 2.2 Types of apparatus

### 2.2.1

#### AUDIO AMPLIFIER

either an independent audio signal amplifying apparatus or the audio signal amplifying part of an apparatus to which this standard applies

### 2.2.2

#### ELECTRONIC MUSICAL INSTRUMENT

electronic apparatus such as an electronic organ, electronic piano or music synthesiser that produces music under the control of the USER

### 2.2.3

#### SUPPLY APPARATUS

apparatus which takes power from the MAINS and from which one or more other apparatus are fed

### 2.2.4

#### SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE

SUPPLY APPARATUS which can be used without special measures not only for the supply of apparatus within the scope of this standard, but also for the supply of other appliances or devices, for example pocket-calculators

### 2.2.5

#### SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS

SUPPLY APPARATUS which is designed to be used only for the supply of specified apparatus within the scope of this standard

### 2.2.6

#### LASER SYSTEM

LASER in combination with an appropriate laser energy source with or without additional incorporated components (see 3.44 of IEC 60825-1)

**2.2.7****LASER**

device which can be made to produce or amplify electromagnetic radiation in the wavelength range from 180 nm to 1 mm primarily by the process of controlled stimulated emission (see 3.36 of IEC 60825-1)

NOTE Devices to which this definition does not apply are Light Emitting Diodes (LEDs) used for displays, infrared remote controls, infrared audio/visual signal transmission and optocouplers.

**2.2.8****IMAGERY**

processing, editing, manipulation and/or storing of video signals

**2.2.9****REMOTE CONTROL**

controlling of an apparatus from a distance, for example mechanically, electrically, acoustically or by means of radiation

**2.2.10****PORTABLE APPARATUS**

specific apparatus designed to be carried easily, the mass of which does not exceed 18 kg

**2.2.11****TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS**

apparatus, the mass of which exceeds 18 kg, specifically designed to be moved frequently from place to place

NOTE Examples of TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS are musical instruments and their associated amplifiers.

**2.2.12****PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS**

apparatus for use in trades, professions or industries and which is not intended for sale to the general public

NOTE The designation should be specified by the manufacturer.

**2.3 Ratings and electrical values****2.3.1****RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE**

supply voltage or voltage range (for three-phase supply, the line-to-line voltage) for which the manufacturer has designed the apparatus

**2.3.2****OPERATING VOLTAGE**

highest voltage, non-repetitive transients being disregarded, to which the insulation under consideration is, or can be subjected when the apparatus is operating at its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE under normal operating conditions

**2.3.3****RIPPLE FREE**

d.c. voltage with a r.m.s. value of a ripple content of not more than 10 % of the d.c. component. The maximum peak voltage does not exceed 140 V for a nominal 120 V ripple free d.c. system, and does not exceed 70 V for a nominal 60 V ripple free d.c. system

**2.3.4****NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER**

sine-wave power dissipated in the RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE, measured at 1 000 Hz at the onset of clipping on either one, or both peaks.

In cases where an amplifier is not intended for operation at 1 000 Hz, a test frequency at the peak response shall be used

**2.3.5****RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE**

resistance, specified by the manufacturer, by which an output circuit should be terminated

**2.3.6****RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION**

current consumption of an apparatus operating at its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE under normal operating conditions

**2.3.7****AVAILABLE POWER**

maximum power which can be drawn from the supplying circuit through a resistive load whose value is chosen to maximise the power for more than 2 min when the circuit supplied is disconnected (see figure 1)

**2.3.8****REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE**

peak voltage that the insulation under consideration is required to withstand

**2.3.9****TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE**

highest peak voltage expected at the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK connection point of the apparatus, arising from external transients on the network

**2.3.10****RATED POWER CONSUMPTION**

power in watts consumed in an apparatus operating at its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE under normal operating conditions

**2.4 Supply and external connections****2.4.1****MAINS**

power source with a nominal voltage of more than 35 V (peak) a.c. or d.c. which is not used solely to supply apparatus specified in 1.1.1

**2.4.2****PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS**

apparatus which is intended for connection to the MAINS by a connection which cannot be loosened BY HAND

**2.4.3****DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS**

electrical connection with the MAINS in such a way that a connection to either pole of the MAINS causes in that connection a permanent current equal to or greater than 9 A, protective devices in the apparatus being not short-circuited

NOTE A current of 9 A is chosen as the minimum breaking current of a 6 A fuse.

**2.4.4****CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS**

electrical connection with the MAINS in such a way that a connection through a resistance of  $2\,000\ \Omega$  to either pole of the MAINS causes in that resistance a permanent current greater than 0,7 mA (peak), the apparatus not being connected to earth

**2.4.5****TERMINAL**

part of an apparatus by which connection is made to external conductors or other apparatus. It may contain several contacts

**2.4.6****PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL**

TERMINAL to which parts are connected which are required to be connected to earth for safety reasons

**2.4.7****TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK**

metallically-terminated transmission medium intended for communication between apparatus that may be located in separate buildings, excluding

- the MAINS systems for supply, transmission and distribution of electrical power, if used as a telecommunication transmission medium;
- television distribution systems using cable

NOTE 1 The term TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is defined in terms of its functionality, not its electrical characteristics. A TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is not itself defined as being a TNV CIRCUIT. Only the circuits in apparatus are so classified.

NOTE 2 A TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK may be

- publicly or privately owned;
- subject to transient overvoltages due to atmospheric discharges and faults in power distribution systems;
- subject to permanent longitudinal (common mode) voltages induced from nearby power lines or electric traction lines.

NOTE 3 Examples of TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS are:

- a public switched telephone network;
- a public data network;
- an ISDN network;
- a private network with electrical interface characteristics similar to the above.

**2.4.8****REMOTE POWER FEEDING**

supply of power to apparatus via a cable network, for example a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK or a cable distribution network for antenna signals

**2.4.9****TNV CIRCUIT**

circuit which is in the apparatus and to which the ACCESSIBLE area of contact is limited (except for a TNV-0 CIRCUIT) and that is so designed and protected that, under normal operating and fault conditions, the voltages do not exceed specified limiting values

A TNV CIRCUIT is considered to be a circuit which is not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.

NOTE 1 The specified limiting values of voltages under normal operating and fault conditions are given in annex B. For requirements regarding accessibility of TNV CIRCUITS, see 4.2.2 of IEC 62151.

TNV CIRCUITS are classified as TNV-0, TNV-1, TNV-2 and TNV-3 CIRCUITS as defined in 2.4.10, 2.4.11, 2.4.12, and 2.4.13 respectively.

NOTE 2 The voltage relationships between TNV CIRCUITS are shown in the table below.

Table 1 – Voltage ranges of TNV circuits

Overvoltages from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS possible?	Voltage ranges	
	Within TNV-0 CIRCUIT limits	Exceeding TNV-0 CIRCUIT limits but within TNV CIRCUIT limits
Yes	TNV-1 CIRCUIT	TNV-3 CIRCUIT
No	TNV-0 CIRCUIT	TNV-2 CIRCUIT

2.4.10  
TNV-0 CIRCUIT

TNV CIRCUIT:  
whose voltages do not exceed a safe value under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions; and

which is not subject to overvoltages from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS

NOTE The limiting values of voltages under normal operating and fault conditions are specified in 9.1.1.1 a) and 11.1 respectively.

2.4.11  
TNV-1 CIRCUIT

TNV CIRCUIT:  
whose voltages do not exceed the limits for a TNV-0 CIRCUIT under normal operating conditions; and

on which overvoltages from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS are possible

2.4.12  
TNV-2 CIRCUIT

TNV CIRCUIT:  
whose voltages exceed the limits for a TNV-0 CIRCUIT under normal operating conditions; and  
which is not subject to overvoltages from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS

2.4.13  
TNV-3 CIRCUIT

TNV CIRCUIT:  
whose voltages exceed the limits for a TNV-0 CIRCUIT under normal operating conditions; and  
on which overvoltages from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS are possible

## 2.5 Signals, sources, loads

### 2.5.1

#### PINK NOISE

NOISE SIGNAL whose energy per unit bandwidth ( $\frac{\Delta W}{\Delta f}$ ) is inversely proportional to frequency

### 2.5.2

#### NOISE SIGNAL

stationary random signal having normal probability distribution of instantaneous values. Unless otherwise stated, the mean value is zero

### 2.5.3

#### SOURCE TRANSDUCER

apparatus intended to convert the energy of a non electrical signal to electrical energy

NOTE Examples are microphone, image sensor, magnetic reproducing head, laser pick-up.

### 2.5.4

#### LOAD TRANSDUCER

apparatus intended to convert the energy of an electrical signal into another form of energy

NOTE Examples are loudspeaker, picture tube, liquid crystal display, magnetic recording head.

## 2.6 Protection against electric shock, insulations

### 2.6.1

#### CLASS I

design in which protection against electric shock does not rely on BASIC INSULATION only, but which includes an additional safety precaution in such a way that means are provided for the connection of ACCESSIBLE conductive parts to the protective (earthing) conductor in the fixed wiring of the installation, in such a way that ACCESSIBLE conductive parts cannot become HAZARDOUS LIVE in the event of a failure of the BASIC INSULATION

NOTE Such a design may have parts of CLASS II.

### 2.6.2

#### CLASS II

design in which protection against electric shock does not rely on BASIC INSULATION only, but in which additional safety precautions, such as DOUBLE INSULATION or REINFORCED INSULATION, are provided, there being no provision for protective earthing or reliance upon installation conditions

### 2.6.3

#### BASIC INSULATION

insulation applied to HAZARDOUS LIVE parts to provide basic protection against electric shock

NOTE BASIC INSULATION does not necessarily include insulation used exclusively for functional purposes.

### 2.6.4

#### DOUBLE INSULATION

insulation comprising both BASIC INSULATION and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION

### 2.6.5

#### SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION

independent insulation applied in addition to BASIC INSULATION in order to reduce the risk of electric shock in the event of a failure of the BASIC INSULATION

#### **2.6.6**

##### **REINFORCED INSULATION**

single insulation applied to HAZARDOUS LIVE parts which provides a degree of protection against electric shock equivalent to DOUBLE INSULATION

NOTE REINFORCED INSULATION may comprise several layers which cannot be tested singly as BASIC INSULATION or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

#### **2.6.7**

##### **PROTECTIVE SEPARATION**

separation between circuits by means of basic and supplementary protection (BASIC INSULATION plus SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION or plus PROTECTIVE SCREENING) or by an equivalent protective provision, for example REINFORCED INSULATION

#### **2.6.8**

##### **PROTECTIVE SCREENING**

separation from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts by means of an interposed conductive screen, connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL

#### **2.6.9**

##### **TOUCH CURRENT**

electric current through a human body when it touches one or more ACCESSIBLE parts [IEV 195-05-21, modified]

#### **2.6.10**

##### **HAZARDOUS LIVE**

electrical condition of an object from which a hazardous TOUCH CURRENT (electric shock) could be drawn (see 9.1.1)

#### **2.6.11**

##### **CLEARANCE**

shortest distance in air between two conductive parts

#### **2.6.12**

##### **CREEPAGE DISTANCE**

shortest distance along the surface of an insulating material between two conductive parts

### **2.7 Components**

#### **2.7.1**

##### **ISOLATING TRANSFORMER**

transformer with PROTECTIVE SEPARATION between the input and output windings

#### **2.7.2**

##### **SEPARATING TRANSFORMER**

transformer, the input windings of which are separated from the output windings by at least BASIC INSULATION

NOTE Such transformers may have parts meeting the requirements of ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS.

#### **2.7.3**

##### **THERMAL RELEASE**

device which prevents the maintenance of excessively high temperatures in certain parts of the apparatus by disconnecting these parts from their supply

NOTE PTC THERMISTORS (see 2.7.8) are not THERMAL RELEASES in the sense of this definition.

**2.7.4****THERMAL CUT-OUT**

THERMAL RELEASE with reset which has no provision for temperature setting by the USER

NOTE A THERMAL CUT-OUT may be of the automatic or of the manual reset type.

**2.7.5****THERMAL LINK**

THERMAL RELEASE without reset, which operates only once and then requires partial or complete replacement

**2.7.6****TRIP-FREE**

automatic action, with a reset actuating member, so designed that the automatic action is independent of manipulation or position of the reset mechanism

**2.7.7****MICRO-DISCONNECTION**

adequate contact separation so as to ensure functional security

NOTE There is a requirement for the dielectric strength of the contact gap but no dimensional requirement.

**2.7.8****PTC THERMISTOR**

thermally sensitive semiconductor resistor, which shows a step-like increase in its resistance when the increasing temperature reaches a specific value. The change of temperature is obtained either by the flow of current through the thermosensitive element, or by a change in the ambient temperature, or by a combination of both

**2.7.9****SAFETY INTERLOCK**

means either of preventing access to a hazardous area until the hazard is removed or of automatically removing the hazardous condition when access is gained

**2.7.10****MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCH**

device operated BY HAND, not incorporating semiconductors, and situated anywhere in the circuit of the apparatus, which can interrupt the intended function, such as sound and/or vision, by moving contacts

NOTE Examples of MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCHES are single-pole or all-pole MAINS SWITCHES, functional switches and switching systems which, for example, can be a combination of relays and switches controlling the relays.

**2.7.11****MAINS SWITCH**

MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCH which interrupts either one pole or all poles of the MAINS, except the protective earthing conductor

**2.7.12****PRINTED BOARD**

base material cut to size, containing all needed holes and bearing at least one CONDUCTIVE PATTERN

**2.7.13****CONDUCTIVE PATTERN**

configuration formed by electrically conductive material of a PRINTED BOARD



**2.7.14****SPECIAL BATTERY**

rechargeable battery or group of rechargeable batteries, identified by battery manufacturer's name and catalogue number, provided with the apparatus or recommended by the manufacturer

**2.8 Miscellaneous****2.8.1****TYPE TEST**

test of one or more specimens made on a certain design to show that the design meets all requirements of this standard

**2.8.2****ROUTINE TEST**

test to which each specimen is subjected during or after manufacture to ascertain whether it complies with certain criteria

**2.8.3****ACCESSIBLE**

possibility of touching by the test finger according to IEC 61032, test probe B

NOTE Any ACCESSIBLE area of a non-conductive part is considered as being covered with a conductive layer (see figure 3 as an example).

**2.8.4****BY HAND**

operation that does not require the use of any object such as a tool, coin, etc.

**2.8.5****SKILLED PERSON**

person with relevant education and experience to enable him or her to avoid dangers and to prevent risks which electricity may create

**2.8.6****INSTRUCTED PERSON**

person adequately advised or supervised by SKILLED PERSONS to enable him or her to avoid dangers and to prevent risks which electricity may create

**2.8.7****USER**

any person, other than a SKILLED PERSON or an INSTRUCTED PERSON, who may come into contact with the apparatus

**2.8.8****STAND-BY**

operating condition where the main functions, such as sound and/or vision, are switched-off and where the apparatus is only partly in operation. In this condition, permanent functions, such as a clock, are maintained and it allows the apparatus to be brought into full operation, for example by REMOTE CONTROL or automatically

**2.8.9****WOOD-BASED MATERIAL**

material in which the main ingredient is machined natural wood, coupled with a binder

NOTE Examples of WOOD-BASED MATERIAL are materials incorporating ground or chipped wood, such as hard fibre board or chip board.

**2.8.10****FIRE ENCLOSURE**

part of the apparatus intended to minimize the spread of fire or flames from within

**2.8.11****POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE**

possible fault which can start a fire if the open-circuit voltage measured across an interruption or faulty contact exceeds a value of 50 V (peak) a.c. or d.c. and the product of the peak value of this voltage and the measured r.m.s. current under normal operating conditions exceeds 15 VA.

Such a faulty contact or interruption in an electrical connection includes those which may occur in CONDUCTIVE PATTERNS on PRINTED BOARDS

NOTE An electronic protection circuit may be used to prevent such a fault from becoming a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE.

**3 General requirements**

**3.1** The apparatus shall be so designed and constructed as to present no danger when used for its intended purpose, either in normal operating conditions or under fault conditions, particularly providing protection against

- hazardous currents passing through the human body (electric shock);
- excessive temperatures;
- hazardous radiations;
- effects of implosion and explosion;
- mechanical instability;
- injury by mechanical parts;
- start and spread of fire.
- ☐ exposure to excessive sound pressures from headphones or earphones.

NOTE A new method of measurement is described in EN 50332-1, Sound system equipment: Headphones and earphones associated with portable audio equipment - Maximum sound pressure level measurement methodology and limit considerations - Part 1: General method for "one package equipment", and in EN 50332-2, Sound system equipment: Headphones and earphones associated with portable audio equipment - Maximum sound pressure level measurement methodology and limit considerations - Part 2: Guidelines to associate sets with headphones coming from different manufacturers. ☐

In general, compliance is checked under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions, as specified in 4.2 and 4.3, by carrying out all the relevant tests specified.

**3.2** Apparatus designed to be fed from the MAINS shall be constructed according to the requirements of CLASS I, or CLASS II apparatus.

**4 General test conditions****4.1 Conduct of tests**

**4.1.1** Tests according to this standard are TYPE TESTS.

☐ NOTE For ROUTINE TEST reference is made to EN 50333. ☐

**4.1.2** The sample or samples under test shall be representative of the apparatus the USER would receive, or shall be the actual apparatus ready for shipment to the USER.

As an alternative to carrying out tests on the complete apparatus, tests may be carried out separately on circuits, components or subassemblies outside the apparatus, provided that inspection of the apparatus and circuit arrangements ensures that such testing will indicate that the assembled apparatus would conform to the requirements of this standard.

*If any such test indicates a likelihood of non-compliance in the complete apparatus, the test shall be repeated in the apparatus.*

*If a test specified in this standard could be destructive, it is permitted to use a physical model to represent the condition to be evaluated.*

NOTE 1 The tests should be carried out in the following order:

- component or material pre-selection;
- component or subassembly bench tests;
- tests where the apparatus is not energized;
- live tests
  - under normal operating conditions,
  - under abnormal operating conditions,
  - involving likely destruction.

NOTE 2 In view of the amount of resources involved in testing and in order to minimize waste, it is recommended that all parties concerned jointly consider the test programme, the test samples and the test sequence.

**4.1.3** *Unless otherwise specified, the tests are carried out under normal operating conditions at:*

- *an ambient temperature between 15 °C and 35 °C, and*
- *a relative humidity of 75 % maximum.*

**4.1.4** *Any position of intended use of the apparatus, normal ventilation not being impeded.*

*The temperature measurements shall be carried out with the apparatus positioned in accordance with the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer, or, in the absence of instructions, the apparatus shall be positioned 5 cm behind the front edge of an open-fronted wooden test box with 1 cm free space along the sides and top and 5 cm depth behind the apparatus.*

*Tests on apparatus, intended to be part of an assembly not provided by the apparatus manufacturer, shall be carried out according to the instructions for use provided by the apparatus manufacturer, specifically those dealing with proper ventilation.*

*The apparatus shall also comply with table 3 when tested on an open bench.*

**4.1.5** *The characteristics of the supply source, except those specified in 4.2.1, used during the tests shall not appreciably influence the test results.*

*Examples of such characteristics are source impedance and waveform.*

**4.1.6** *Where relevant, a standard signal consisting of PINK NOISE, band-limited by a filter whose response conforms to that given in figure C.1 in annex C.*

NOTE If appropriate, the standard signal may be used to modulate a carrier wave.

*The output measuring equipment shall indicate true r.m.s. values for crest factors up to at least 3, and the frequency response shall conform to that shown in annex C.*

**4.1.7** The a.c. values given in this standard are r.m.s. values, unless specified otherwise.

The d.c. values given in this standard are RIPPLE FREE values.

## 4.2 Normal operating conditions

Normal operating conditions are the most unfavourable combination of the following conditions.

**4.2.1** The apparatus, except battery-operated apparatus, is connected to a supply voltage of 0,9 times or 1,1 times of any RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE for which the apparatus is designed.

For battery-operated apparatus a fully charged rechargeable battery or dry batteries in a fresh condition are used.

RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION and RATED POWER CONSUMPTION are measured at the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.

In case of doubt, tests may also be performed at the value of any RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.

For apparatus having a RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE range not requiring the adjustment of a voltage setting device, the apparatus is connected to a supply voltage of 0,9 times the lower limit or 1,1 times the upper limit of any RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE range; moreover, the apparatus is connected to any nominal supply voltage within the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE range marked on the apparatus.

Any rated supply frequency marked on the apparatus is used.

**A1** Any type of supply for which the apparatus is designed to be used. **A1**

For d.c. supply any polarity is used, unless this is prevented by the construction of the apparatus.

**4.2.2** Any position of controls which are ACCESSIBLE to the USER for adjustment BY HAND, including REMOTE CONTROLS, excluding voltage setting devices complying with 14.8 and volume controls and tone controls.

Any cable connected REMOTE CONTROL device, detachable by a connector or a similar device, is connected or not.

A cover, enclosing a LASER SYSTEM, which can be opened BY HAND, is opened fully, opened partly or closed.

**4.2.3** In the case of single-phase supply, any earth TERMINAL and any PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL may be connected to either pole of the isolated supply source used during the test.

In the case of a supply other than single phase, any earth TERMINAL and any PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL may be connected to the neutral or to any phase of the isolated supply source used during the test.

#### 4.2.4 In addition, for an AUDIO AMPLIFIER:

- a) The apparatus is operated in such a way as to deliver one-eighth of the NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER to the RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE using the standard signal described in 4.1.6 with the tone controls set to their mid position.

Where the NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER cannot be obtained using the standard signal, one-eighth of the maximum attainable output power is taken.

As an alternative, where the amplifier function is not adversely affected, a sine wave of 1 kHz or where applicable, another frequency corresponding to the geometric mean of the upper and lower -3 dB response points of the relevant part of the apparatus may be used to supply each channel.

If the result of a measurement performed with a sine wave does not comply with this standard, the measurement with PINK NOISE is decisive.

When determining whether a part or output TERMINAL contact is HAZARDOUS LIVE according to 9.1.1.1 and 11.1, the apparatus shall be operated with a sinusoidal input test signal of 1 kHz or where applicable, another frequency corresponding to the geometric mean of the upper and lower -3 dB response points of the relevant amplifier part of the apparatus, sufficient in amplitude for the apparatus to deliver the NON-CLIPPED OUTPUT POWER into its RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE. Open-circuit output voltage is determined after the load is removed.

- b) The most unfavourable RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE of any output circuit is connected or not.
- c) Organs or similar instruments which have a tone-generator unit are operated with any combination of two bass pedal keys, if any, and ten manual keys depressed, and all stops and tabs which can increase the output power are activated.

For AUDIO AMPLIFIERS used in an ELECTRONIC MUSICAL INSTRUMENT which does not generate a continuous tone, the standard signal described in 4.1.6 is applied to the signal input TERMINAL or to the appropriate input stage of the AUDIO AMPLIFIER.

- d) Where the intended amplifier function depends on phase difference between two channels, there shall be a phase difference of 90° between the signals applied to the two channels.

4.2.5 For apparatus incorporating motors, load conditions for the motor are chosen which may occur during intended use, including stalling BY HAND if this is possible.

4.2.6 An apparatus supplying power to other apparatus is loaded to give its rated power or is not loaded.

4.2.7 A SUPPLY APPARATUS to be used inside apparatus for which it is intended exclusively, is tested within such apparatus after installation according to the manufacturer's instruction for use.

4.2.8 In addition, for Citizen's Band apparatus, the RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE is connected or not to the antenna TERMINAL or, if applicable, to a telescopic antenna extended to any length. The transmitting test conditions are specified in IEC 61149.

4.2.9 Antenna positioners

4.2.9.1 In addition, for antenna positioners in combination with their control and SUPPLY APPARATUS:

- four consecutive movements from one endstop to the opposite endstop;
- 15 min resting period.

The movements and the resting periods are repeated as many times as necessary for the relevant tests. For temperature measurements the movements and the resting periods are repeated until a steady state of temperature has been reached but not longer than 4 h.

After the last movement period, the 15 min resting period does not apply to the temperature measurements.

4.2.9.2 In addition, for satellite antenna positioners consisting of a power supply and control unit without a motor drive system, the power supply unit shall be loaded in accordance with the marked output rating and operated with a duty cycle of 5 min on, and 15 min off.

4.2.10 Apparatus designed to be supplied exclusively by a SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS specified by the manufacturer of the apparatus, shall be tested together with this SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS.

The supply voltage for the SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS is determined in accordance with 4.2.1.

Where a voltage setting device for the output voltage of the SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS is provided, it shall be adjusted to the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE of the apparatus under test.

4.2.11 Apparatus which can be supplied by SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE shall be supplied by a test power supply according to table 2 corresponding to the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE of the apparatus under test. The values of no-load voltage given in table 2 are subject to the under- and over-voltage provisions specified in 4.2.1.

Table 2 – Test power supply

RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE V d.c.	Nominal no-load voltage V d.c.	Internal resistance Ω
1,5	2,25	0,75
3,0	4,50	1,50
4,5	6,75	2,25
6,0	9,00	3,00
7,5	11,25	3,75
9,0	13,50	4,50
12,0	18,00	6,00
NOTE This table provides a standardized set of supply parameters intended to represent those found in SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE in the range 1,5 V to 12 V and with a rated output current of 1 A. Supply parameters for voltages >12 V and output currents >1 A are under consideration.		

**4.2.12** Apparatus intended to be used with optional detachable legs or stands supplied by the manufacturer of the apparatus are tested with or without legs or stands fitted.

### 4.3 Fault conditions

For operation under fault conditions, in addition to the normal operating conditions mentioned in 4.2, each of the following conditions is applied <sup>[A1]</sup> one at a time <sup>[A1]</sup> and, associated with it, those other fault conditions which are a logical consequence.

NOTE 1 The logical consequences of a fault condition are those which occur when a fault is applied.

*Circuits, or parts of a circuit supplied with an open circuit voltage not exceeding 35 V (peak) a.c. or d.c. and not generating voltages above that value, are not considered to present a fire hazard if the current which may be drawn from the supplying circuit for more than 2 min at any load, including short-circuit, is limited to not more than 0,2 A. Such supplied circuits are not subject to fault conditions testing.*

*An example of a test circuit to measure the voltage and the current is given in figure 1.*

NOTE 2 Examination of the apparatus and all its circuit diagrams, excluding the internal circuit diagrams of integrated circuits, generally shows the fault conditions which are likely to create a hazard and which need to be applied. These are applied in sequence, in the order which is most convenient.

NOTE 3 When carrying out the examination in NOTE 2, the operating characteristics of integrated circuits are taken into consideration.

NOTE 4 The fault tests are only to be made in the wooden test box mentioned in 4.1.4, if no installation instructions are provided and there is a possibility that the test box will influence the results.

*When a specified fault condition test is carried out, it can cause consequential faults which either interrupt or short-circuit a component. In case of doubt, the fault condition test shall be repeated up to two more times with replacement components in order to check that the same result is always obtained. Should this not be the case, the most unfavourable consequential fault, whether interruption or short circuit, shall be applied together with the specified fault condition.*

<sup>[A1]</sup> **4.3.1** Short-circuit across CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES, if they are less than the values specified in Clause 13 for BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, with the exception of insulation between parts of different polarity DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.

NOTE For CLEARANCES between parts of different polarity DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS reference is made to 13.1. <sup>[A1]</sup>

**4.3.2** Short-circuit across parts of insulating material, the short-circuiting of which might cause an infringement of the requirements regarding protection against electric shock hazard or overheating, with the exception of insulating parts which comply with the requirements of 10.3.

NOTE This subclause does not imply a need to short-circuit the insulation between turns of coils.

**4.3.3** Short-circuit, or if applicable, interruption of

- heaters of electronic tubes;
- insulation between heaters and cathodes of electronic tubes;
- spacings in electronic tubes, excluding picture tubes;
- semiconductor devices, one lead at a time interrupted or any two leads connected together <sup>[A1]</sup> one pair at a time <sup>[A1]</sup> (but see 4.3.4 d)).

NOTE If electronic tubes are so constructed that a short circuit between certain electrodes is highly improbable or even impossible, the electrodes concerned need not be short-circuited.

**4.3.4** Short-circuit or disconnection, whichever is more unfavourable, of resistors, capacitors, windings (for example transformers, degaussing coils), loudspeakers, optocouplers, varistors or non-linear passive components, the short-circuiting or disconnection of which might cause an infringement of the requirements regarding protection against electric shock or overheating.

These fault conditions do not apply to

- a) resistors complying with the requirements of 14.1 and, as far as applicable, of 11.2;
- b) PTC THERMISTORS complying with IEC 60730-1, clause 15, 17, J15 and J17;
- c) capacitors and RC-units complying with the requirements of 14.2, provided that the voltage at their terminations does not exceed their rated voltage and that their application is in accordance with 8.5 or 8.6;
- d) the insulation between the input and output terminations of optocouplers complying with the requirements of 14.11;
- e) windings and the insulation of transformers and other windings mentioned in 14.3 complying with the requirements of that subclause;
- f) surge suppression varistors complying with the requirements of 14.12.

**4.3.5** For apparatus containing an AUDIO AMPLIFIER, using the standard signal described in 4.1.6 so as to deliver the most unfavourable output power from zero up to the maximum attainable output power to the RATED LOAD IMPEDANCE or, if applicable, to the most unfavourable load impedance connected to the output TERMINALS including short-circuit and open circuit.

**4.3.6** Motors are stalled.

**4.3.7** Motors, relay coils or the like, intended for short-time or intermittent operation, are operated continuously if this can occur during operation of the apparatus.

**4.3.8** The apparatus is connected simultaneously to alternative types of supply unless this is prevented by the construction.

**4.3.9** Output TERMINALS of apparatus supplying power to other apparatus, except MAINS socket-outlets DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, are connected to the most unfavourable load impedance, including short circuit. MAINS socket outlets shall be loaded with 1,1 times the highest load possible based on over-current protection and the outlet configuration except where the wiring to the socket outlet has the same cross-sectional area as the MAINS cord.

**A1 4.3.10** The top, sides and the back of an apparatus, if such surfaces have ventilation openings, shall be covered one at a time with a piece of card of 200 g/m<sup>2</sup> density with dimensions not less than each tested surface, covering all openings.

Openings on different surfaces on top of the apparatus (if any) are covered simultaneously by separate pieces of card.

Openings on top of the apparatus, on a surface inclined at an angle greater than 30° and smaller than 60° to the horizontal, from which an obstruction is free to slide, are excluded.

On the back and the sides of the apparatus, the card is attached to the upper edge and allowed to hang freely.

NOTE There is no test for the bottom surface. **A1**



**4.3.11** *If it is possible to insert USER replaceable batteries with reversed polarity, the apparatus is tested with one or more batteries with both intended and reversed polarity.*

NOTE CAUTION, there is a danger of explosion when this test is applied.

**4.3.12** *For Citizen's Band apparatus, the most unfavourable load impedance, including short circuit, is connected to the antenna TERMINAL or to the antenna itself, for example a telescopic antenna, when no antenna TERMINAL is provided. The transmitting test conditions are specified in IEC 61149.*

**4.3.13** *For apparatus to be supplied from an a.c. MAINS and provided with a voltage setting device to be set by the USER, connection to a supply voltage of 250 V a.c., with the MAINS voltage setting device at the most unfavourable position.*

**4.3.14** *Apparatus designed to be supplied by a SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS with a voltage setting device for the output voltage, specified by the manufacturer of the apparatus, shall be tested by adjusting this voltage setting device to any output voltage.*

*During this test, 4.2.1 is applied, except that the SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS is fed by its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.*

*The test need not be made if the current consumption of the apparatus under test cannot exceed 0,2 A for more than 2 min, for example by the operation of a fuse.*

**4.3.15** *Apparatus which can be supplied by SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE shall be tested by using a test power supply as specified in table 2 step by step upwards, starting with the value one step above the value specified for the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE of the apparatus under test.*

*This test is not applied to apparatus having a RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE equal to or higher than the maximum RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE in table 2.*

*During this test, 4.2.1 is applied, except that the no-load voltages have their nominal values.*

*The test need not be made if the current consumption of the apparatus under test cannot exceed 0,2 A for more than 2 min, for example by the operation of a fuse.*

**4.3.16** *For apparatus with a charging circuit, recharge a fully discharged SPECIAL BATTERY with one cell short-circuited.*

NOTE See also 11.2 and 14.10.3.

## 5 Marking and instructions

NOTE Additional requirements for marking and instructions are contained in 4.1.4, 4.2.7, 8.19.1, 8.19.2, 9.1.5, 14.3.1, 14.5.1.3, 14.5.2.2, 14.5.4, clause 19 and annex B.

Markings shall be permanent, comprehensible and easily discernible on the apparatus when ready for use.

The information should preferably be on the exterior of the apparatus, excluding the bottom. It is, however, permissible to have it in an area that is easily ACCESSIBLE BY HAND, for example under a lid, or on the exterior of the bottom of a PORTABLE APPARATUS or an apparatus with a mass not exceeding 7 kg, provided that the location of the marking is given in the instructions for use.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by rubbing the marking BY HAND for 15 s with a piece of cloth soaked with water and, at a different place or on a second sample, for 15 s with a piece of cloth soaked with petroleum spirit. After this the marking shall be legible; it shall not be easily possible to remove marking plates and they shall show no curling.*

*Petroleum spirit, to be used for reference purposes is defined as follows:*

*The petroleum spirit is an aliphatic solvent hexane having a maximum aromatics content of 0,1 % by volume, a kauri-butanol value of 29, an initial boiling point of approximately 65 °C, a dry-point of approximately 69 °C and a specific mass of approximately 0,7 kg/l.*





Letter symbols for quantities and units shall be in accordance with IEC 60027.

Graphical symbols shall be in accordance with IEC 60417 and ISO 7000, as appropriate.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

### 5.1 Identification and supply ratings

The apparatus shall be marked with the following:

- a) maker's or responsible vendor's name, trade mark or identification mark;
- b) model number or type reference;
- c) the symbol for CLASS II, if applicable:  (IEC 60417-5172)
- d) nature of supply:
  - a.c. only with the symbol:  (IEC 60417-5032)
  - d.c. only with the symbol:  (IEC 60417-5031)
  - a.c. or d.c. with the symbol:  (IEC 60417-5033)
  - for three-phase systems, reference is made to IEC 61293;
- e) RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE or range of the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGES which can be applied without operating a voltage setting device.
 

Apparatus which can be set to different RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGES or ranges of RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGES shall be so constructed that the indication of the voltage or range of voltages to which the apparatus is set, is discernible on the apparatus when ready for use.

A solidus shall be used for USER selectable ratings, for example "110/230 V" and a hyphen shall be used for a rating range, for example "110-230 V";
- f) rated MAINS frequency (or range of frequencies) in hertz, if safety is dependent on the use of the correct MAINS frequency;
- g) RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION or RATED POWER CONSUMPTION of apparatus which can be supplied by SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE. As an alternative the information may be given in the instruction manual.
 

The measured consumption at RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE shall not exceed the marked value by more than 10 %;
- h) power consumption marking for apparatus intended for connection to an a.c. MAINS supply other than single phase;

NOTE Details for the measurement of the power consumption are under consideration.

- i) RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION or RATED POWER CONSUMPTION for apparatus intended for connection to an a.c. MAINS supply.

The measured consumption at RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE shall not exceed the marked value by more than 10 %.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**[C1]** NOTE For RATED POWER CONSUMPTION measurements of TVs reference is made to EN 62087. Measurements are done in the ON (play) operating mode. **[C1]**

## 5.2 TERMINALS

TERMINALS shall be marked as follows:

- a) The wiring TERMINAL intended for connection of the protective earthing conductor associated with the supply wiring:



(IEC 60417-5019)

This symbol shall not be used for other earthing TERMINALS.

- b) TERMINALS which are hazardous live under normal operating conditions, except TERMINALS for MAINS supply:



(IEC 60417-5036)

- c) Output TERMINALS provided for supply of other apparatus except MAINS supply shall be marked with the nominal output voltage and, in addition, the maximum output current, if with the most unfavourable load temperature rises higher than those allowed in table 3 can occur, unless the TERMINALS are marked with the type references of the apparatus which are permitted to be connected.

Socket-outlets providing MAINS power to other apparatus shall be marked with the power and current which may be drawn.

If there is only one TERMINAL provided for supply of other apparatus, the marking may be put on the apparatus at any place, taking into account the first paragraphs of clause 5.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**5.3** Where in a manufacturer's service documentation, for example in circuit diagrams or lists of components, a symbol is used to indicate that a specific component shall be replaced only by the component specified in that documentation for safety reasons, the following symbol shall be used:



(ISO 7000-0434)

This symbol may also be put adjacent to the relevant component.

This symbol shall not be placed on components.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

## 5.4 Instructions

When information with regard to safety is required according to this standard, this information shall be given in an instruction for installation or use and supplied with the apparatus. This information shall be given in a language acceptable to the country where the apparatus is intended to be used.

NOTE 1 Reference is made to ISO/IEC Guide 37 [17].

NOTE 2 The following information with regard to safety are recommended to be included as far as applicable:

- minimum distances around the apparatus for sufficient ventilation;
- the ventilation should not be impeded by covering the ventilation openings with items, such as newspapers, table-cloths, curtains, etc.;
- no naked flame sources, such as lighted candles, should be placed on the apparatus;
- attention should be drawn to the environmental aspects of battery disposal;
- the use of apparatus in tropical and/or moderate climates.

**5.4.1** In addition, the instructions shall include the following as far as applicable.

- a) For MAINS powered apparatus and for apparatus producing internal voltages greater than 35 V (peak) a.c. or d.c., having no protection against splashing water according to annex A, the instructions for use shall state that the apparatus shall not be exposed to dripping or splashing and that no objects filled with liquids, such as vases, shall be placed on the apparatus.
- b) A warning that TERMINALS marked with the symbol according to 5.2 b) are HAZARDOUS LIVE and that the external wiring connected to these TERMINALS requires installation by an INSTRUCTED PERSON or the use of ready-made leads or cords.
- c) If an apparatus is provided with a replaceable lithium battery, the following applies:
  - if the battery is intended to be replaced by the USER, there shall be a warning close to the battery or in both the instructions for use and the service instructions;
  - if the battery is not intended to be replaced by the USER, there shall be a warning close to the battery or in the service instructions.

This warning shall include the following or similar text:

### CAUTION

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.  
Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

- d) A warning that an apparatus with CLASS I construction shall be connected to a MAINS socket outlet with a protective earthing connection.
- e) Instructions to ensure correct and safe installation and interconnection of the apparatus in multimedia systems.
- f) If the apparatus is not tested to the stability requirements of 19.1, 19.2 or 19.3 due to fastening in place, the following or similar text shall be marked on or provided with the apparatus:

### WARNING

To prevent injury, this apparatus must be securely attached to the floor/wall  
in accordance with the installation instructions.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

- [A1]** g) A warning that batteries (battery pack or batteries installed) shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.
- h) If the apparatus is provided with a CRT with protective film attached to the faceplate as part of the safety implosion protection system in accordance to IEC 61965, the following warning, or wording with a similar meaning, shall be given in the instructions:

#### WARNING

The CRT in this apparatus employs a protective film on the face.  
This film must not be removed as it serves a safety function and  
removal will increase the risk of serious injury. **[A1]**

- [C1]** za) A warning that excessive sound pressure from earphones and headphones can cause hearing loss. **[C1]**

**5.4.2** With regard to devices for disconnection from the MAINS, instructions shall state that

- a) where the MAINS plug or an appliance coupler is used as the disconnect device, the disconnect device shall remain readily operable;
- b) where an all-pole MAINS SWITCH is used as the disconnect device, the location on the apparatus and the function of the switch shall be described, and the switch shall remain readily operable;
- c) for PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS provided neither with an all-pole MAINS SWITCH nor an all-pole circuit breaker, the installation shall be carried out in accordance with all applicable installation rules.

Where marking, signal lamps or similar means might give the impression that the apparatus is completely disconnected from the MAINS, information that states clearly the correct situation shall be included. If symbols are used, their meaning shall also be explained.

Marking of the off-position by the relevant symbol according to IEC 60417-5008 or according to IEC 60417-5010 is permitted only for an all-pole MAINS SWITCH which interrupts all poles of the MAINS supply except the protective earthing conductor.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

## 6 Hazardous radiations

### **[C1]** 6.1 Ionizing radiation

*Equipment that might produce ionizing radiation is checked by measuring the amount of radiation.*

*The amount of radiation is determined by means of a radiation monitor of the ionizing chamber type with an effective area of 1 000 mm<sup>2</sup> or by measuring equipment of other types giving equivalent results.*

*Measurements are made with the equipment on test operating at the most unfavourable supply voltage (see 4.2) and with operator controls and service controls adjusted so as to give maximum radiation whilst maintaining the equipment operative for normal use.*

*Internal preset controls not intended to be adjusted during the lifetime of the equipment are not considered to be service controls.*

*At any point 100 mm from the surface of the operator access area, the dose-rate shall not exceed 1 µSv/h (0,1 mR/h) (see Note). Account shall be taken of the background level.*

NOTE These values appear in Directive 96/29/Euratom. **[C1]**

## 6.2 Laser radiation

An apparatus containing a LASER SYSTEM shall be so constructed that personal protection against laser radiation is provided under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions.

An apparatus containing a LASER SYSTEM is exempt from all further requirements of this subclause if

- classification by the manufacturer according to IEC 60825-1, clauses 3, 8 and 9 shows that the approachable emission level does not exceed class 1 under all conditions of operation, maintenance, service and failure, and
- it does not contain an embedded LASER according to IEC 60825-1.

NOTE 1 Information about the measuring equipment is given in IEC 61040 [10].

NOTE 2 The term "approachable emission level" denotes "accessible emission limit (AEL)" in the sense of IEC 60825-1.

Apparatus shall be classified and labelled in accordance with the approachable emission level measured under fault conditions, except that for apparatus not exceeding class 1, 5.2 of IEC 60825-1, does not apply.

*All controls adjustable from the outside BY HAND or any object such as a tool or a coin, and those internal adjustments or pre-sets which are not locked in a reliable manner, are adjusted so as to give maximum radiation.*

NOTE 3 Soldered joints and paint locking are examples of adequate locking.

The laser radiation emitted by redirection as mentioned in IEC 60825-1, 3.32 b), shall not be measured for a LASER SYSTEM of class 1.

*Compliance is met by satisfying the relevant requirements as specified in IEC 60825-1 with the following modifications and additions:*

### 6.2.1

- a) The apparatus shall meet under normal operating conditions, the approachable emission limits of class 1 as specified in IEC 60825-1, table 1. Time basis of the classification is 100 s.

*Compliance is checked by performing the relevant measurements as specified in IEC 60825-1, 8.2.*

- b) If the apparatus incorporates a LASER SYSTEM which meets, under normal operating conditions, the approachable emission limits of class 1, the requirements mentioned under c) and d) do not apply.

- c) Adequate measures shall be taken to prevent the opening of any cover BY HAND giving access to laser radiation in excess of class 1 limits.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

- d) Where safety is dependent on the proper functioning of a mechanical SAFETY INTERLOCK, this interlock shall be fail-safe (in the failure mode the apparatus is rendered inoperative or non hazardous), or shall withstand a switching test of 50 000 cycles of operation with current and voltage applied as under normal operating conditions.

*Compliance is checked by inspection or test.*

### 6.2.2

- a) When the apparatus is operated under fault conditions as specified in 4.3, the approachable emission level from the apparatus shall be not higher than class 3R outside the wavelength range of 400 nm to 700 nm and not higher than five times the limit for class 1 within the wavelength range of 400 nm to 700 nm.

NOTE The class 3R limits are as specified in IEC 60825-1, table 3.

*Compliance is checked by performing the relevant measurements as specified in IEC 60825-1, 8.2*

- b) If the apparatus incorporates a LASER SYSTEM which meets, under fault conditions, the approachable emission limits given in 6.2.2 a), the requirements mentioned under c) and d) do not apply.

- c) Adequate measures shall be taken to prevent the opening of any cover BY HAND giving access to laser radiation in excess of the limits given in 6.2.2 a).

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

- d) Where safety is dependent on the proper functioning of a mechanical SAFETY INTERLOCK, this interlock shall be fail-safe (in the failure mode the apparatus is rendered inoperative or non hazardous), or shall withstand a switching test of 50 000 cycles of operation with current and voltage applied as under normal operating conditions.

*Compliance is checked by inspection or test.*

## 7 Heating under normal operating conditions

### 7.1 General

During intended use, no part of the apparatus shall attain an excessive temperature.

*Compliance is checked by measuring the temperature rises under normal operating conditions when a steady state has been attained.*

NOTE 1 In general, a steady state is assumed to be attained after 4 h of operation.

*Temperature rises are determined:*

- *in the case of winding wires, by the change in resistance method or any other method giving the average temperature of the winding wires;*

NOTE 2 Care should be taken to ensure that during the measurement of the resistance of winding wires, the influence of circuits or loads connected to these winding wires is negligible.

- *in other cases, by any suitable method.*

Temperature rises shall not exceed the values specified in 7.1.1 to 7.1.5 inclusive.

*Any single protective device or component of a protective circuit operating during the test shall be defeated, except for*

- a) *THERMAL CUT-OUTS with automatic reset complying with 14.5.1,*
- b) *PTC THERMISTORS complying with 14.5.3.*

*Consequently, if continuous operation of an AUDIO AMPLIFIER is not possible, the amplifier shall also be operated at the maximum possible signal level permitting continuous operation.*

#### **7.1.1 ACCESSIBLE parts**

The temperature rise of ACCESSIBLE parts shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item a), "Normal operating conditions".

#### **7.1.2 Parts, other than windings, providing electrical insulation**

The temperature rise of insulating parts, other than windings, providing BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY, or REINFORCED INSULATION, and of insulating parts, the failure of which would cause an infringement of the requirements of 9.1.1 or a fire hazard, shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item b) "Normal operating conditions", taking into account condition d) of table 3.

*If an insulating part is used to establish a CLEARANCE or to contribute to a CREEPAGE DISTANCE and its permissible temperature rise is exceeded, then the relevant area of the insulating part is disregarded when compliance with clauses 8 and 11 is checked.*

#### **7.1.3 Parts acting as a support or a mechanical barrier**

The temperature rise of parts, a mechanical failure of which would cause an infringement of the requirements of 9.1.1, shall not exceed the value given in table 3, item c) "Normal operating conditions".

#### **7.1.4 Windings**

The temperature rise of windings comprising insulation providing protection against electric shock or fire hazard shall not exceed the values given in table 3, items b) and d) "Normal operating conditions".

*If an insulating part is used to establish a CLEARANCE or to contribute to a CREEPAGE DISTANCE and its permissible temperature rise is exceeded, then the relevant area of the insulating part is disregarded when compliance with clauses 8 and 11 is checked.*

NOTE If the insulation is incorporated in a winding in such a way that its temperature rise cannot be measured directly, the temperature is assumed to be the same as that of the winding wire.

#### **7.1.5 Parts not subject to a limit under 7.1.1 to 7.1.4 inclusive**

According to the nature of the material, the temperature rise of the part shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item e), "Normal operating conditions".



Table 3 – Permissible temperature rise of parts of the apparatus

Parts of the apparatus	Normal operating conditions K	Fault conditions K
a) <i>ACCESSIBLE parts</i> Knobs, handles, etc. if <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– metallic 30</li> <li>– non-metallic <sup>c</sup> 50</li> </ul> Enclosures if <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– metallic <sup>b</sup> 40</li> <li>– non-metallic <sup>b + c</sup> 60</li> </ul>	65 65 65 65	
b) <i>Parts providing electrical insulation <sup>d</sup></i> Supply cords and wiring insulation with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– polyvinyl chloride or synthetic rubber <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– not under mechanical stress 60</li> <li>– under mechanical stress 45</li> </ul> </li> <li>– natural rubber 45</li> </ul> Other insulations of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– thermoplastic materials <sup>e</sup> f)</li> <li>– non-impregnated paper 55</li> <li>– non-impregnated cardboard 60</li> <li>– impregnated cotton, silk, paper and textile 70</li> <li>– laminates based on cellulose or textile, bonded with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– phenol-formaldehyde, melamine-formaldehyde, phenol-furfural or polyester 85</li> <li>– epoxy 120</li> </ul> </li> <li>– mouldings of <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– phenol-formaldehyde or phenol-furfural, melamine and melamine phenolic compounds with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– cellulose fillers 100</li> <li>– mineral fillers 110</li> </ul> </li> <li>– thermosetting polyester with mineral fillers 95</li> <li>– alkyd with mineral fillers 95</li> </ul> </li> <li>– composite materials of <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– polyester with glass-fibre reinforcement 95</li> <li>– epoxy with glass-fibre reinforcement 100</li> </ul> </li> <li>– silicone rubber 145</li> </ul>	100 100 100 f) 70 80 90 110 150 130 150 150 150 150 150 190	
c) <i>Parts acting as a support or a mechanical barrier including the inside of enclosures <sup>d</sup></i> Wood and WOOD-BASED MATERIALS 60 Thermoplastic materials <sup>e</sup> f) Other materials d)	90 f) d)	
d) <i>Winding wires <sup>d + g</sup></i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– insulated with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– non-impregnated silk, cotton, etc. 55</li> <li>– impregnated silk, cotton, etc. 70</li> <li>– oleoresinous materials 70</li> <li>– polyvinyl-formaldehyde or polyurethane resins 85</li> <li>– polyester resins 120</li> <li>– polyesterimide resins 145</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	75 100 135 150 155 180	
e) <i>Other parts</i> These temperature rises apply to parts not covered by items a), b), c) and d): Parts of wood and WOOD-BASED MATERIAL 60 Lithium batteries $\boxed{A_1}$ 40 <sup>h)</sup> Resistors and parts of metal, glass, ceramic, etc. No limit All other parts 200	140 50 <sup>i)</sup> $\boxed{A_1}$ No limit 300	

For conditions see the following page.

Table 3 (continued)

Conditions applicable to table 3	
a	<p>For tropical climates, permissible temperature rises of 10 K less than those specified in this table are required.</p> <p>The values of the temperature rises are based on a maximum ambient temperature of 35 °C for moderate climates and of 45 °C for tropical climates.</p> <p>Where the temperatures are thermostatically limited by a THERMAL CUT-OUT with automatic reset or a PTC THERMISTOR, the measured temperature on the part shall not exceed 35 °C plus the permitted rise of table 3.</p>
b	<p>For parts not likely to be touched during intended use, temperature rises up to 65 K are allowed under normal operating conditions. The wooden test box of 4.1.4 shall not be used when evaluating access to parts likely to be touched. The following parts are considered not likely to be touched:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– rear and bottom panels, except those incorporating switches or controls handled during normal use,</li><li>– external heatsinks and metallic parts directly covering external heatsinks, except those on surfaces incorporating switches or controls handled during normal use,</li><li>– parts of the top surface which are more than 30 mm below the general plane of the top surface.</li></ul> <p>For outside parts of metal which are covered with plastic material, the thickness of which is at least 0,3 mm, a temperature rise which corresponds to the permissible temperature rise of the insulating material is allowed.</p>
c	<p>If these temperature rises are higher than those allowed by the class of the relevant insulating material, the nature of the material is the governing factor.</p>
d	<p>For the purpose of this standard, the permissible temperature rises are based on service experience in relation to the thermal stability of the materials. The materials quoted are examples. For materials for which higher temperature limits are claimed, and for materials other than those listed, the maximum temperatures shall not exceed those which have been proved to be satisfactory, for example in accordance with IEC 60085.</p>
e	<p>Natural rubber and synthetic rubbers are not considered as being thermoplastic materials.</p>
f	<p>Due to their wide variety, it is not possible to specify a generic permissible temperature rise for thermoplastic materials. In order to determine the softening temperature of a specific thermoplastic material, the softening temperature as determined by the test B50 of ISO 306 shall be used. If the material is not known or if the actual temperature of the parts exceeds the softening temperature, the test described under 1) shall be used.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1) the softening temperature of the material is determined on a separate specimen, under the conditions specified in ISO 306 with a heating rate of 50 °C/h and modified as follows:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– the depth of penetration is 0,1 mm;</li><li>– the total thrust of 10 N is applied before the dial gauge is set to zero or its initial reading noted.</li></ul></li><li>2) the temperature limits to be considered for determining the temperature rises are:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– under normal operating conditions, a temperature of 10 K below the softening temperature;</li><li>– under fault conditions, the softening temperature itself.</li></ul></li></ol> <p>If the required softening temperature exceeds 120 °C, condition <sup>c</sup> shall be taken into account.</p>
g	<p>For switch mode transformers temperature rises may be measured with a thermocouple placed as close as practicable to the winding. The permitted temperature rise shall be 10 K less than that given in table 3.</p>
A1) h)	<p>Lithium batteries shall meet the permissible temperature rise, unless such batteries comply with the applicable electrical tests of 6.2.2.1 or 6.2.2.2 of IEC 60086-4.</p>
i)	<p>Lithium batteries shall meet the permissible temperature rise, unless such batteries comply with all electrical tests of 6.3.2 of IEC 60086-4. A1</p>

7.2 Heat resistance of insulating material

Insulating material supporting parts CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS shall be resistant to heat if, during intended use, these parts carry a steady-state current exceeding 0,2 A and can generate substantial heat due to imperfect contact.

*Compliance is checked by subjecting the insulating material to the test specified in table 3, condition f.*

The softening temperature of the insulating material shall be at least 150 °C.

In those cases where two groups of conductors, each supported by insulating parts, can be rigidly connected or joined together, for example by plug and socket, only one of the insulating parts need meet the test. Where one of the insulating parts is fixed in the apparatus, this part shall meet the test.

NOTE 1 Examples of parts which can generate substantial heat during intended use are contacts of switches and of voltage setting devices, screw TERMINALS and fuse holders.

NOTE 2 This test need not be performed on parts which are in accordance with a relevant IEC standard.

## **8 Constructional requirements with regard to the protection against electric shock**

**8.1** Conductive parts, covered only by lacquer, solvent-based enamel, ordinary paper, untreated textile, oxide films or beads are considered to be bare.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**8.2** The apparatus shall be designed and constructed so that operations BY HAND, such as

- changing the setting for the voltage or nature of supply;
- replacing fuse-links and indicator lights;
- handling of drawers etc.,

does not involve a risk of electric shock.

*Compliance is checked by application of the tests of 9.1.1.*

**8.3** The insulation of HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not be provided by hygroscopic materials.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and, in case of doubt, by the following test.*

*A specimen of the material, as specified in IEC 60167, clause 9, is subjected to a temperature of  $(40 \pm 2)$  °C, and a relative humidity of 90 % to 95 %, the conditioning period being:*

- 7 days (168 h) for apparatus to be used under tropical conditions;
- 4 days (96 h) for other apparatus.

*Within 1 min after this preconditioning, the specimen shall withstand the tests of 10.3 without the humidity treatment according to 10.2.*

**8.4** The apparatus shall be so constructed that there is no risk of an electric shock from ACCESSIBLE parts or from those parts rendered ACCESSIBLE following the removal BY HAND of a cover.

This requirement applies also to internal parts of battery compartments which become ACCESSIBLE by the removal of a cover when replacing the batteries.

This requirement does not apply to battery compartments inside the apparatus, where the replacement of their batteries by the USER is not intended, for example batteries for memories.

*Compliance is met by satisfying the requirements of 8.5 or 8.6.*

NOTE Inaccessible contacts of TERMINALS are regarded as ACCESSIBLE parts, unless marked with the symbol according to 5.2 b) or intended to connect the apparatus to the MAINS or to provide MAINS power to other apparatus.

**8.5** For CLASS I apparatus, the ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, except for those parts of the apparatus which have DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION (CLASS II construction), shall be separated from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts by BASIC INSULATION meeting the insulation requirements as specified in clause 10 and the requirements for CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES as specified in clause 13.

This requirement does not apply to insulations whose short-circuiting does not cause any electric shock hazard.

NOTE 1 For example, if one end of a secondary winding of a SEPARATING TRANSFORMER is connected to an ACCESSIBLE conductive part, the other end need not meet any special insulation requirement with regard to the same ACCESSIBLE conductive part.

A resistor bridging BASIC INSULATION shall comply with the requirements as specified in 14.1 a).

NOTE 2 Parts of the apparatus which have DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION (CLASS II construction) may also be bridged by a resistor in compliance with the requirements as specified in 14.1 a).

A capacitor or RC-unit bridging BASIC INSULATION between a HAZARDOUS LIVE part and an ACCESSIBLE conductive part connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL, shall comply with the requirements of 14.2.1 a).

Such resistors, capacitors or RC-units shall be positioned inside the enclosure of the apparatus.

CLASS I apparatus shall be provided with a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact to which the protective earthing contacts of socket-outlets, if any, and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts shall be reliably connected. Such connection is not necessary for those ACCESSIBLE conductive parts which are insulated from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts by DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION (CLASS II construction) or those which are protected from becoming HAZARDOUS LIVE by a conductive part reliably connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL.

NOTE 3 Examples of such a conductive part are a metal screen in a transformer between the primary and the secondary windings, a metal chassis, etc.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**8.6** For CLASS II apparatus, the ACCESSIBLE parts shall be separated from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts either by DOUBLE INSULATION specified under item a) or by REINFORCED INSULATION specified under item b).

This requirement does not apply to insulations whose short-circuiting does not cause any electric shock hazard.

NOTE 1 For example, if one end of a secondary winding of a SEPARATING TRANSFORMER is connected to an ACCESSIBLE conductive part, the other end need not meet any special insulation requirement with regard to the same ACCESSIBLE conductive part.

A component complying with the requirements of 14.1 a) or 14.3, except components according to 14.3.4.3, may bridge BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY, DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION.

Components according to 14.3.4.3 may bridge BASIC INSULATION only.

BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATIONS may each be bridged by a capacitor or RC-unit, having the same rated values, complying with the requirements of 14.2.1 a).

DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION may be bridged by two capacitors or RC-units in series, having the same rated values, each complying with the requirements of 14.2.1 a).

Alternatively DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION may be bridged by a single capacitor or RC-unit complying with the requirements of 14.2.1 b).

NOTE 2 For external insulation, bridging DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION, also see 8.8.

Such resistors, capacitors or RC-units shall be positioned inside the enclosure of the apparatus.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

- a) If ACCESSIBLE parts are separated from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts by BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, the following shall apply:

Each of these insulations shall comply with the insulation requirements as specified in clause 10 and with the requirements for CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES specified in clause 13.

Enclosures of wood not complying with the requirements of 8.3 are permitted as SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION if they withstand the dielectric strength test of 10.3.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and/or measurement.*

- b) If ACCESSIBLE parts are separated from HAZARDOUS LIVE parts by REINFORCED INSULATION the following shall apply:

The insulation shall comply with the insulation requirements specified in clause 10. Moreover, it shall comply with the requirements for CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES specified in clause 13.

NOTE 3 An example of assessment of REINFORCED INSULATION is given in figure 2.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and/or measurement.*

## 8.7 Void.

**8.8** BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY and REINFORCED INSULATION shall each withstand the dielectric strength test as specified in 10.3.

For DOUBLE INSULATION either the BASIC or the SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION shall have a thickness of at least 0,4 mm.

REINFORCED INSULATION shall have a minimum thickness of 0,4 mm when not subject to any mechanical stress which, at the temperatures during normal operating conditions and under fault conditions, would be likely to lead to deformation or deterioration of the insulating material.

NOTE Under mechanical stress conditions, the thickness may have to be increased to comply with the insulation requirements as specified in clause 10 and the mechanical strength requirements as specified in clause 12.

The above requirements are not applicable to insulation in thin sheet materials irrespective of their thickness provided that

- it is used within the enclosure of the apparatus, and
- BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION comprises at least two layers of material, each of which will pass the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, or
- BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION comprises three layers of material for which all combinations of two layers together pass the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, or
- REINFORCED INSULATION comprises at least two layers of material, each of which will pass the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for REINFORCED INSULATION, or
- REINFORCED INSULATION comprises three layers of insulation material for which all combinations of two layers together pass the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for REINFORCED INSULATION.

There is no requirement for all layers of insulation to be of the same insulating material.

For requirements for insulated winding wires for use without additional interleaved insulation, see 8.17.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

**[A<sub>1</sub>]** For test specifications of non-separable thin sheet insulation, see 8.22.

NOTE The purpose of the tests in 8.22 is to ensure that the material has adequate strength to resist damage when hidden in inner layers of insulation. Therefore, the tests are not applied to insulation in two layers. The tests are also not applied to SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION. **[A<sub>1</sub>]**

**8.9** The insulation of internal wiring between HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors in wires or cables and ACCESSIBLE parts, or between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and conductors in wires or cables connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, shall have a thickness of at least 0,4 mm if made of polyvinyl chloride. Other materials are allowed provided that they withstand the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 and that their thickness ensures an equivalent mechanical strength, where the construction so requires.

NOTE For example, a polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) insulation having a thickness of at least 0,24 mm is considered to fulfil this requirement.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

**8.10** In CLASS II apparatus, DOUBLE INSULATION shall be provided between

- ACCESSIBLE parts and conductors in wires or cables CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and
- conductors in wires or cables connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts and parts CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.

Either the BASIC or the SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION shall comply with the requirements of 8.9. The other insulation shall withstand the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

If DOUBLE INSULATION consists of two layers which cannot be tested separately, it shall withstand the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3 for REINFORCED INSULATION.

The test voltage of 10.3 is applied between the conductor and metal foil wrapped tightly around the insulation of the wire over a length of 10 cm.

In the case of insulating sleeves, the test voltage of 10.3 is applied between a tight-fitting metal rod inserted into the sleeve and a metal foil wrapped tightly around the sleeve over a length of 10 cm.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

**8.11** The construction of the apparatus shall be such that, should any wire become detached, the CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES are not reduced below the values specified in clause 13 by the natural movement of a detached wire. This requirement does not apply if there is no risk of a wire becoming detached.



NOTE 1 It is assumed that not more than one connection will become detached at the same time.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

NOTE 2 Examples of methods deemed to prevent a wire from becoming detached are:

- a) the conductor of the wire is anchored to the tag before soldering, unless breakage close to the soldering place is likely to occur as a result of vibration;
- b) wires are twisted together in a reliable manner;
- c) wires are fastened together reliably by cable ties, adhesive tapes with thermosetting adhesives according to IEC 60454, sleeves or the like;
- d) the conductor of the wire is inserted into a hole in a PRINTED BOARD before soldering, the hole having a diameter slightly greater than that of the conductor, unless breakage close to the PRINTED BOARD is likely to occur as a result of vibration;
- e) the conductor of the wire and its insulation, if any, are securely wrapped around the termination by means of a special tool;
- f) the conductor of the wire and its insulation, if any, are crimped to the termination by means of a special tool.

*In case of doubt, the vibration test of 12.1.2 is carried out to verify compliance.*

**8.12**  Void. 

**8.13** Windows, lenses, signal lamp covers, etc. shall be fastened by positive means if HAZARDOUS LIVE parts are rendered ACCESSIBLE by their absence.

NOTE Friction only is not regarded as a positive means.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and, in case of doubt, by applying a force from the outside of 20 N for 10 s at the most unfavourable place and in the most unfavourable direction.*

**8.14** Covers which may be subjected to forces during intended use, for example covers supporting TERMINALS (see clause 15) shall be fastened by positive means if HAZARDOUS LIVE parts are rendered ACCESSIBLE by their absence.

NOTE Friction only is not regarded as a positive means.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and, in case of doubt, by applying a force of 50 N for 10 s at the most unfavourable place and in the most unfavourable direction.*

*After the tests of 8.13 and 8.14, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard; in particular no HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall become ACCESSIBLE.*

**8.15** Internal wiring of the apparatus, damage to the insulation of which is liable to cause a hazard in the sense of this standard, shall

- be secured so as not to contact parts exceeding the permissible temperature rise for the insulation of the wires as specified in table 3 when a force of 2 N is applied to any part of the wiring or their surroundings, and
- be so constructed that there is no risk of damage to the insulation of the wires, for example by sharp edges, moving parts or pinches, which may come into contact with other parts of the apparatus, when a force of 2 N is applied to any part of the wiring or their surroundings.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

**8.16** Apparatus designed to be supplied exclusively by a SUPPLY APPARATUS specified by the manufacturer of the apparatus, shall be so constructed that the SPECIAL SUPPLY APPARATUS cannot be replaced, without modification, by a SUPPLY APPARATUS FOR GENERAL USE.

NOTE The required non-interchangeability may be obtained for example by special connections.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

### **8.17 Requirements for insulated winding wires for use without additional interleaved insulation**

Insulated winding wires of wound components, the insulation of which is providing BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY, REINFORCED OR DOUBLE INSULATION shall meet the following requirements:

- where the insulation on the winding wire is used to provide BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY or REINFORCED INSULATION in a wound component, the insulated wire shall comply with annex H;
- the minimum number of constructional layers applied to the conductor or conductors shall be as follows:
  - for BASIC INSULATION: two wrapped layers or one extruded layer;
  - for SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION: two layers, wrapped or extruded;
  - for REINFORCED INSULATION: three layers, wrapped or extruded.
- where more than one constructional layer is specified above, it is permitted for the total number of layers to be on one conductor or shared between the two conductors;
- the insulated winding wires that are adjacent to each other are considered to be separated by DOUBLE INSULATION if the insulation of each conductor is rated for the OPERATING VOLTAGE;
- if the wire is insulated with two or more spirally wrapped layers of tape, the overlap of layers shall be adequate to ensure continued overlap during manufacture of the wound component. Layers of tape shall be sealed if CREEPAGE DISTANCES between layers, as wrapped, do not fulfil clause 13 of this standard;

NOTE 1 For wires insulated by an extrusion process, sealing is inherent to the process.



- where two insulated wires or one bare and one insulated wire are in contact inside a wound component, crossing each other at an angle between 45° and 90° and subject to winding tension, protection against mechanical stress shall be provided. The protection can be achieved by one of the following:
  - physical separation in the form of insulating sleeving or sheet material or using double the required number of insulation layers, or
  - the wound component meets the requirements of 8.18.
- the manufacturer shall demonstrate that the wire has been subjected to 100 % routine dielectric strength test as specified in H.3.

*Compliance is checked by inspection of the part and of the declaration by the manufacturer of the winding wire.*

#### **8.18 Endurance test for wound components with insulated winding wires without additional interleaved insulation**

*Where required by 8.17, the wound component is subjected to the following cycling test, each cycle consisting of a heat run, a vibration test and a moisture treatment. Measurements according to 8.18 d) are made before the cycling test and after each cycle.*

*The number of specimens is 3. The specimens are subjected to 10 test cycles.*

##### **a) Heat run**

*Depending on the type of insulation (thermal classification), the specimens are kept in a heating cabinet for a combination of time and temperature as specified in table 4. The 10 cycles are carried out with the same combination.*

*The temperature in the heating cabinet shall be maintained within a tolerance of  $\pm 3$  °C.*

**Table 4 – Test temperature and testing time (in days) per cycle**

Test temperature °C	Temperature for the insulation system °C				
	100	115	120	140	165
220					4
210					7
200					14
190				4	
180				7	
170				14	
160			4		
150		4	7		
140		7			
130	4				
120	7				
Corresponding classification according to IEC 60085 and IEC 60216	A	E	B	F	H
The manufacturer decides which combination of time and temperature shall be used for the test.					

*After the heat tests, the specimens are allowed to cool down to ambient temperature before the vibration test is made.*

b) *Vibration test*

*Specimens are fastened to the vibration generator in their normal position of use, as specified in IEC 60068-2-6, by means of screws, clamps or straps round the component. The direction of vibration is vertical, and the severity is:*

- *duration: 30 min;*
- *amplitude: 0,35 mm;*
- *frequency range: 10 Hz, ...55 Hz, ...10 Hz;*
- *sweep rate: approximately one octave per minute.*

c) *Moisture treatment*

*The specimens are submitted for two days to the moisture treatment of 10.2.*

d) *Measurements*

*After each cycle, the insulation resistance is measured and the dielectric strength test is carried out according to 10.3. In addition, the following test is made for transformers operating at MAINS frequency only:*

*After the dielectric strength test, one input circuit is connected to a voltage equal to a test voltage of at least 1,2 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE, at double the rated frequency for 5 min. No load is connected to the transformer. During the test, polyfilar windings, if any, are connected in series.*

*A higher test frequency may be used; the duration of the period of connection, in minutes, then being equal to 10 times the rated frequency divided by the test frequency, but not less than 2 min.*

During this test, there shall be no breakdown of the insulation between the turns of a winding, between input and output circuits, between adjacent input or output circuits, or between the windings and any conductive core.

*The values of the test voltage for the dielectric test according to 10.3 are reduced to 35 % of the specified values and the testing times doubled.*

A specimen is considered not to pass the test if the no-load current or the in-phase component of the no-load input current is at least 30 % greater than the corresponding value, obtained during the initial measurement.

If, after the completion of all 10 cycles, one or more specimens have failed, the transformer is considered as not complying with the endurance test.

## 8.19 Disconnection from the MAINS

**8.19.1** When the apparatus is designed to be fed from the MAINS, a disconnect device shall be provided to isolate the apparatus from the MAINS for servicing.

NOTE The following are examples of disconnect devices:

- the MAINS plug,
- an appliance coupler,
- an all-pole MAINS SWITCH,
- an all-pole circuit breaker.

Where the MAINS plug or appliance coupler is used as the disconnect device, instructions for use shall comply with 5.4.2 a).

Where an all-pole MAINS SWITCH or an all pole circuit breaker is used as the disconnect device, it shall have contact separation of at least 3 mm in each pole and shall disconnect all poles simultaneously.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

**8.19.2** For apparatus on which a MAINS SWITCH is used as a disconnect device, the on-position of the switch shall be indicated.

NOTE The indication of the on-position may be in the form of marking, illumination, audible indication or other suitable means.

Where the indication is in the form of marking, the relevant requirements of clause 5 shall be complied with.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**8.20** A MAINS SWITCH shall not be fitted in the MAINS flexible cable or cord.

NOTE Additional requirements for switches are given in 14.6.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**8.21** Where resistors, capacitors or RC-units are used for bridging contact gaps of switches CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, the components shall comply with 14.1 a) or 14.2.2 respectively.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

#### **A1 8.22 Test specifications of non-separable thin sheet material**

*Compliance is checked by subclause 26.3 in IEC 61558-1 or by the following:*

*Three test samples, each individual sample consisting of three or more layers of non-separable thin sheet material forming REINFORCED INSULATION, are used. One sample at a time is fixed to the mandrel of the test fixture (Figure 14) as shown in Figure 15.*

*A downward force of  $150\text{ N} \pm 10\text{ N}$  is applied to the free end of the sample (see Figure 16), using an appropriate clamping device. The mandrel is rotated by hand without jerks*

- from the initial position (Figure 15) to the final position (Figure 16) and back;*
- as above for the second time;*
- from the initial position to the final position.*

*If a sample breaks during rotation where it is fixed to the mandrel or the clamping device, this does not constitute a failure and the test is repeated on a fresh sample. If a sample breaks at any other place, the test has failed.*

*After this preconditioning, a sheet of metal foil,  $0,035\text{ mm} \pm 0,005\text{ mm}$  thick, at least 200 mm long, is placed along the surface of the sample, hanging down on each side of the mandrel (see Figure 16). The surface of the foil in contact with the sample shall be conductive, not oxidised or otherwise insulated. The foil is positioned so that its edges are not less than 18 mm from the edges of the sample (see Figure 17). The foil is then tightened by two equal weights, one at each end, using appropriate clamping devices.*

*While the mandrel is in its final position, and within the 60 s following the final positioning, a dielectric strength test is applied between the mandrel and the metal foil in accordance with 10.3.2, using a test voltage of 1,5 times the value specified in Table 5 for REINFORCED INSULATION, but not less than 5 kV.*

*The entire test procedure is repeated on the other two samples.*

*No flashover or breakdown shall occur during the test; corona effects and similar phenomena being disregarded. A1*

## 9 Electric shock hazard under normal operating conditions

### 9.1 Testing on the outside

#### 9.1.1 General

ACCESSIBLE parts shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE.

NOTE 1 For interconnection with apparatus under the scope of other standards, circuits should comply with 9.1.1 and, depending upon the construction, with 8.5 or 8.6.

In addition, when not connected to another apparatus, inaccessible contacts of TERMINALS shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE, with the following exceptions:

- contacts of signal output TERMINALS, if they have to be HAZARDOUS LIVE for functional reasons, provided the contacts are separated from the supply source as required according to clause 8 for ACCESSIBLE conductive parts.

NOTE 2 Inaccessible input TERMINALS, for example those of loudspeakers, are permitted to be HAZARDOUS LIVE when connected to such output TERMINALS.

NOTE 3 For the marking of such output TERMINALS, see 5.2 b).

- TERMINALS complying with 15.1.1 provided for connecting the apparatus to the MAINS, socket-outlets and contacts of connecting blocks for providing power to other apparatus.

The requirements to determine whether a HAZARDOUS LIVE part is ACCESSIBLE apply only to HAZARDOUS LIVE voltages not exceeding 1 000 V a.c. or 1 500 V d.c. For higher voltages, there shall be a CLEARANCE between the part at HAZARDOUS LIVE voltage and the test finger or the test pin as specified in 13.3.1 for BASIC INSULATION (see figure 3).

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by measurements according to 9.1.1.1 and tests according to 9.1.1.2.*

#### 9.1.1.1 Determination of HAZARDOUS LIVE parts

In order to verify that a part or a contact of a TERMINAL is HAZARDOUS LIVE, the following measurements are carried out between any two parts or contacts, then between any part or contact and either pole of the supply source used during the test. Discharges shall be measured to the TERMINAL provided for connecting the apparatus to the supply source, immediately after the interruption of the supply.

NOTE 1 For discharges between the poles of the MAINS plug, see 9.1.6.

*The part or contact of a TERMINAL is HAZARDOUS LIVE if*

##### *a) the open-circuit voltage exceeds*

- 35 V (peak) a.c. or 60 V d.c.,
- for audio signals of PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS, 120 V r.m.s.,
- for audio signals of other than PROFESSIONAL APPARATUS, 71 V r.m.s.;

*If the voltage limits in a) are exceeded, provisions b) to d) apply.*

##### *b) the TOUCH CURRENT, expressed as the corresponding voltages $U_1$ and $U_2$ , and measured in accordance with IEC 60990, with the measuring network described in annex D of this standard, exceeds the following values:*

- for a.c.:  $U_1 = 35 \text{ V (peak)}$  and  $U_2 = 0,35 \text{ V (peak)}$ ;
- for d.c.:  $U_1 = 1,0 \text{ V}$ .

NOTE 2 The limit values of  $U_2 = 0,35 \text{ V (peak)}$  for a.c. and  $U_1 = 1,0 \text{ V}$  for d.c. correspond to the values  $0,7 \text{ mA (peak)}$  a.c. and  $2,0 \text{ mA d.c.}$

The limit value  $U_1 = 35 \text{ V (peak)}$  for a.c. corresponds to the value  $70 \text{ mA (peak)}$  a.c. for frequencies greater than  $100 \text{ kHz}$ .

and moreover

- c) *the charge exceeds  $45 \mu\text{C}$  for stored charges at voltages between  $60 \text{ V d.c.}$  and  $15 \text{ kV d.c.}$ , or*
- d) *the energy of discharge exceeds  $350 \text{ mJ}$  for stored charges at voltages exceeding  $15 \text{ kV d.c.}$*

NOTE 3 It is recommended that for apparatus intended to be used in tropical climates, the values given in a) and b) above, be halved.

NOTE 4 To avoid unnecessarily high TOUCH CURRENTS when several apparatus are interconnected, it is recommended that the individual TOUCH CURRENT values are not higher than needed for functional reasons.

For CLASS I constructions the r.m.s. TOUCH-CURRENT to earth shall not be more than  $3,5 \text{ mA}$ . The measurement shall be carried out with the measurement network described in annex D of this standard and with the protective earthing connection disconnected.

#### 9.1.1.2 Determination of ACCESSIBLE parts

*In order to determine whether a HAZARDOUS LIVE part is ACCESSIBLE, the jointed test finger according to test probe B of IEC 61032, is pushed against the enclosure or inserted through any openings of the enclosure, including openings in the bottom, without appreciable force.*

*Through openings, the test finger is applied to any depth that the finger will permit and is rotated or angled before, during and after insertion to any position. If the opening does not allow the entry of the finger, the force on the finger in the straight position is increased to  $20 \text{ N} \pm 2 \text{ N}$  and the test repeated with the finger in angled position.*

*The test is repeated using small finger probes according to test probes 18 and 19 of IEC 61032. This does not apply if the intended conditions of use prevent the apparatus from being accessed by children.*

*Conductive parts, covered only by lacquer, solvent-based enamel, ordinary paper, untreated textile, oxide films or beads are considered to be bare.*

**A1** *Moving parts of loudspeaker systems, such as dust caps or cones of drivers or passive radiators, are not regarded as preventing accessibility.*

NOTE See also 13.3.1. **A1**

*For CLASS II constructions, the test probe 13 of IEC 61032 shall not touch HAZARDOUS LIVE parts when applied with a force of  $3 \text{ N} \pm 0,3 \text{ N}$  in every possible position.*

*The test probe is not applied to socket-outlets, connectors providing MAINS power, fuse holders and the like.*

NOTE For indication of electrical contact, a voltage of not less than  $40 \text{ V}$  and not more than  $50 \text{ V}$  in series with a suitable lamp may be used.

### 9.1.2 Shafts of operating knobs, handles, levers and the like

Shafts of operating knobs, handles, levers and the like shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE.

*Compliance is checked by inspection, and in case of doubt, by measurement according to 9.1.1.1.*

### 9.1.3 Openings of the enclosure

The apparatus shall be so designed that suspended foreign bodies cannot become HAZARDOUS LIVE, when introduced through ventilation or other holes.

*Compliance is checked by applying to the holes a metal test pin having a diameter of 4 mm and a length of 100 mm. The test pin is suspended freely from one end, the penetration is limited to the length of the test pin.*

*The test pin shall not become HAZARDOUS LIVE.*

### 9.1.4 TERMINALS

The use of a single-pole plug or a bare wire to make connection with a contact of a TERMINAL for earth or antenna or for audio, video or associated signals, shall not involve the risk of an electric shock.

The test is not applied to TERMINALS marked with the symbol of 5.2 b).

NOTE See also 15.1.2.

*Compliance is checked by the following tests:*

*Within 25 mm measured from each contact of the TERMINAL, a test pin according to IEC 61032, test probe D, however limited in length to  $20\text{ mm} \pm 0,2\text{ mm}$ , is applied in every possible position, in case of doubt with a force of  $10\text{ N} \pm 1\text{ N}$ .*

*Each contact is tested with a straight test probe according to IEC 61032, test probe D, in case of doubt with a force of  $1\text{ N} \pm 0,1\text{ N}$ .*

*The test probes shall not become HAZARDOUS LIVE.*

### 9.1.5 Pre-set controls

If a hole giving access to pre-set controls is marked as such on the enclosure or in the instruction for use, and the setting of this control requires a screwdriver or other tool, the adjustment of the control shall not involve the risk of an electric shock.

*Compliance is checked by applying to the opening a test probe according to IEC 61032, test probe C.*

*The test probe is applied in every possible position, in case of doubt with a force of  $10\text{ N} \pm 1\text{ N}$ .*

*The test probe shall not become HAZARDOUS LIVE.*

### 9.1.6 Withdrawal of MAINS plug

Apparatus intended to be connected to the MAINS by means of a MAINS plug shall be so designed that there is no risk of an electric shock from stored charge on capacitors, when touching the pins or contacts of the plug after its withdrawal from the socket-outlet.

NOTE For the purpose of this subclause, male interconnection couplers and male appliance couplers are regarded as MAINS plugs.

*Compliance is checked by measurement according to 9.1.1.1 a) or c) or by calculation.*

*The MAINS SWITCH, if any, is in the off-position, unless it is more unfavourable in the on-position.*

*Two seconds after withdrawal of the MAINS plug, the pins or contacts of the plug shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE.*

*The test may be repeated up to 10 times to obtain the most unfavourable situation.*

*If the nominal capacitance across the MAINS poles does not exceed 0,1  $\mu$ F, no test is conducted.*

### 9.1.7 Resistance to external forces

The enclosure of the apparatus shall be sufficiently resistant to external forces.

*Compliance is checked by the following tests:*

- a) *by means of a rigid test finger according to IEC 61032, test probe 11, a force of 50 N  $\pm$  5 N, directed inwards, is applied for 10 s to different points of the enclosure including openings and textile coverings.*

*The force shall be so exerted by the tip of the test finger as to avoid wedge or lever action.*

*During the test, the enclosure shall not become HAZARDOUS LIVE, HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not become ACCESSIBLE, textile coverings shall not touch HAZARDOUS LIVE parts;*

- b) *by means of a test hook as shown in figure 4, a force of 20 N  $\pm$  2 N, directed outwards, is applied for 10 s at all points where this is possible.*

*During the test, HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not become ACCESSIBLE;*

- c) *external conductive enclosures and conductive parts of an external enclosure shall be subjected for 5 s to a steady force of (250  $\pm$  10) N for floor-standing apparatus or (100  $\pm$  10) N for other apparatus, applied to the enclosure or to a part of the enclosure fitted to the apparatus, by means of a suitable test tool providing contact over a circular plane surface 30 mm in diameter.*

NOTE 1 Contacts of TERMINALS are not considered to be a conductive part of the external enclosure.

*After the tests, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.*

NOTE 2 The apparatus need not be connected to the supply source during the tests.

## 9.2 Removal of protective covers

A part which becomes ACCESSIBLE by the removal of a cover BY HAND shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE (see also 14.7).

This requirement applies also to internal parts of battery compartments which become ACCESSIBLE by the removal of a cover either BY HAND or with the use of a tool, coin or other object, when replacing the batteries. An exception is made in the case of batteries which are not intended to be replaced by the USER, for example batteries for memories.

*Compliance is checked by application of the tests of 9.1.1, except that the measurements are made 2 s after removal of the cover.*

NOTE Any part removable BY HAND of a voltage setting device is considered to be a protective cover.

## 10 Insulation requirements

The insulation requirements given in this standard are for frequencies up to 30 kHz. It is permitted to use the same requirements for insulation operating at frequencies over 30 kHz until additional data are available.

NOTE For information on insulation behaviour in relation to frequency see IEC 60664-1 and IEC 60664-4 [9].

### 10.1 Surge test

The insulation on CLASS II apparatus between ACCESSIBLE parts or parts connected to them and HAZARDOUS LIVE parts, shall withstand surges due to transients, caused for example by thunderstorms and entering the apparatus through the antenna TERMINAL.

*Compliance is checked by the following test:*

*The insulation between*

- *TERMINALS for the connection of antenna and MAINS supply TERMINALS, and between*
- *MAINS supply TERMINALS and any other TERMINAL in case of apparatus providing supply voltages to other apparatus with antenna TERMINALS,*

*is subjected to 50 discharges at a maximum rate of 12/min, from a 1 nF capacitor charged to 10 kV in a test circuit, as shown in figure 5a.*

NOTE During this test, the apparatus should not be energized.

*After the test, the tested insulation shall comply with the requirements of 10.3.*

### 10.2 Humidity treatment

The safety of the apparatus shall not be impaired by humidity conditions which may occur in the intended use.



*Compliance is checked by the humidity treatment described in this subclause, followed immediately by the tests of 10.3.*

*Cable entries, if any, are left open. If knock-outs are provided, they are opened.*

*Electrical components, covers and other parts which can be removed BY HAND are removed and subjected, if necessary, to the humidity treatment with the main part.*

*The humidity treatment is carried out in a humidity chamber containing air with a relative humidity of  $93^{+2}_{-3}$  %.*

*The temperature of the air, at all places where the apparatus can be located, is maintained at  $30^{+0}_{-2}$  °C.*

*Apparatus intended to be used in tropical climates are subjected to a temperature of  $40^{+2}_{-2}$  °C and a relative humidity of  $93^{+2}_{-3}$  %.*

*Before being placed in the chamber, the apparatus is brought to a temperature between the specified temperature and a 4 K higher temperature.*

*The apparatus is kept in the chamber for*

- *5 days (120 h) for apparatus intended to be used in tropical climates,*
- *2 days (48 h) for other apparatus.*

NOTE 1 In most cases, the apparatus may be brought to the specified temperature by keeping it at this temperature for at least 4 h before the humidity treatment.

NOTE 2 The air in the chamber should be stirred and the chamber should be so designed that mist or condensed water will not precipitate on the apparatus.

NOTE 3 During this test, the apparatus should not be energized.

*After this treatment, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.*

### **10.3 Insulation resistance and dielectric strength**

**10.3.1** The insulation of the insulating materials shall be adequate.

*Compliance is checked in accordance with 10.3.2, and, unless otherwise stated, immediately after the humidity treatment according to 10.2.*

NOTE In order to facilitate dielectric strength testing, components and subassemblies may be tested separately.

**10.3.2** *The insulations listed in table 5 shall be tested:*

- *for insulation resistance with 500 V d.c.; and*
- *for dielectric strength as follows:*
  - *insulations stressed with d.c. voltage (RIPPLE FREE) are tested with a d.c. voltage;*
  - *insulations stressed with a.c. voltage are tested with an a.c. voltage at MAINS frequency.*

However, where corona, ionization, charge effects or the like may occur, a d.c. test voltage is recommended.

NOTE 1 Where there are capacitors across the insulation under test, it is recommended that d.c. test voltages are used.

Test voltages shall be as specified in table 5 for the appropriate grade of insulation (BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY or REINFORCED INSULATION) and for the OPERATING VOLTAGE  $U$  across the insulation.

For the purpose of determining the OPERATING VOLTAGE  $U$ , the following applies:

- the apparatus is fed by its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE;
- in case of a.c. voltages, the true peak value including periodic and non-periodic superimposed pulses with a half-value time longer than 50 ns shall be measured;
- in case of d.c. voltages, the peak value of any superimposed ripple shall be included;
- periodic and non-periodic transients with a half-value time not exceeding 50 ns shall be disregarded;
- unearthed ACCESSIBLE conductive parts shall be assumed to be connected to an earth TERMINAL or to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact;
- where a transformer winding or other part is floating, i.e. not connected to a circuit which establishes its potential relative to earth, it shall be assumed to be connected to an earth TERMINAL or to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact at the point which results in the highest OPERATING VOLTAGE being obtained;
- where DOUBLE INSULATION is used, the OPERATING VOLTAGE across the BASIC INSULATION shall be determined by imagining a short-circuit across the SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, and vice versa. For insulation between transformer windings, the short-circuit shall be assumed to take place at the point at which the highest OPERATING VOLTAGE is produced across the other insulation;
- for insulations between two transformer windings, the highest voltage between any two points in the two windings shall be used, taking into account external voltages to which the windings may be connected;
- for insulations between a transformer winding and another part, the highest voltage between any point of the winding and the other part shall be used.

The test voltages shall be obtained from a suitable source so designed that, when the output TERMINALS are short-circuited after the test voltage has been adjusted to the appropriate level, the output current is at least 200 mA.

An over-current device shall not trip when the output current is less than 100 mA.

Care shall be taken that the value of the test voltage applied is measured within  $\pm 3\%$ .

Initially, not more than half of the prescribed test voltage is applied, then it is raised rapidly to the full value which is held for 1 min.

The measurements of the insulation resistance and the dielectric strength tests are made in the humidity chamber, or in the room in which the apparatus was brought to the prescribed temperature, after the reassembly of those parts which may have been removed.

*The apparatus is deemed to comply with the requirement, if the insulation resistance measured after 1 min is not less than the values given in table 5 and no flash-over or breakdown occurs during the dielectric strength test.*

*When testing enclosures of insulating material, a metal foil is pressed tightly against ACCESSIBLE parts.*

*For apparatus incorporating both REINFORCED INSULATION and lower grades of insulation, care shall be taken that the voltage applied to the REINFORCED INSULATION does not overstress BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.*

NOTE 2 ACCESSIBLE conductive parts may be connected together during the dielectric strength test.

NOTE 3 An instrument to carry out the dielectric strength test on thin sheets of insulating material is described in figure 6.

NOTE 4 The test is not made on insulation the short-circuiting of which does not cause any electric shock hazard, for example in the case where one end of a secondary winding of an ISOLATING TRANSFORMER is connected to an ACCESSIBLE conductive part, the other end need not meet any insulation requirement with regard to the same ACCESSIBLE conductive part.

*Resistors, capacitors and RC-units complying with 14.1, 14.2.1 and 14.2.2 respectively, connected in parallel with the insulations to be tested, are disconnected. Inductors and windings which otherwise would prevent the test from being made, are also disconnected.*

**Table 5 – Test voltages for dielectric strength test and values for insulation resistance**

Insulation	Insulation resistance	AC test voltage (peak) or DC test voltage																				
1 Between parts of different polarity DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.	2 MΩ	For rated MAINS voltages ≤150 V (r.m.s.): 1 410 V  For rated MAINS voltages >150 V (r.m.s.): 2 120 V																				
2 Between parts separated by BASIC INSULATION or by SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.	2 MΩ	Curve A of figure 7																				
3 Between parts separated by REINFORCED INSULATION.	4 MΩ	Curve B of figure 7																				
NOTE Curves A and B of figure 7 are defined by the following points:																						
<table> <tr> <th rowspan="2">OPERATING VOLTAGE <i>U</i> (peak)</th><th colspan="2">Test voltage (peak)</th></tr> <tr> <th>Curve A</th><th>Curve B</th></tr> <tr> <td>35 V</td><td>707 V</td><td>1 410 V</td></tr> <tr> <td>354 V</td><td></td><td>4 240 V</td></tr> <tr> <td>1 410 V</td><td>3 980 V</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>10 kV</td><td>15 kV</td><td>15 kV</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;10 kV</td><td>1,5<i>U</i> V</td><td>1,5<i>U</i> V</td></tr> </table>			OPERATING VOLTAGE <i>U</i> (peak)	Test voltage (peak)		Curve A	Curve B	35 V	707 V	1 410 V	354 V		4 240 V	1 410 V	3 980 V		10 kV	15 kV	15 kV	>10 kV	1,5 <i>U</i> V	1,5 <i>U</i> V
OPERATING VOLTAGE <i>U</i> (peak)	Test voltage (peak)																					
	Curve A	Curve B																				
35 V	707 V	1 410 V																				
354 V		4 240 V																				
1 410 V	3 980 V																					
10 kV	15 kV	15 kV																				
>10 kV	1,5 <i>U</i> V	1,5 <i>U</i> V																				

## 11 Fault conditions

NOTE To check compliance with the requirements of this clause, it may be necessary to repeat the dielectric strength tests. However, it is advisable to identify beforehand all the insulations to be tested with a higher test voltage in order to avoid more than one humidity treatment.

### 11.1 Electric shock hazard

Protection against electric shock shall still exist when the apparatus is operated under fault conditions.

*Compliance is checked by the tests described in clause 9, modified as specified below and under fault conditions.*

*For contacts of TERMINALS*

- *the permissible values of 9.1.1.1 a) for other than audio signals, are increased to 70 V (peak) a.c. and 120 V d.c.,*

NOTE 1 The limits under normal operating conditions for audio signals should not be exceeded under fault conditions.

*and*

- *the permissible values of 9.1.1.1 b) are increased to  $U_1 = 70$  V (peak) and  $U_2 = 1,4$  V (peak) for a.c. and to  $U_1 = 4$  V for d.c.,*

*provided that the connectors for antenna and/or earth cannot be inserted into the TERMINAL under test.*

NOTE 2 It is recommended that for apparatus intended to be used in tropical climates, the values given above be halved.

*If short-circuiting or disconnecting a resistor, a capacitor, an RC-unit, an optocoupler or an inductor causes an infringement of the requirements, the apparatus is still deemed to be satisfactory if the component complies with the relevant requirements of clause 14 (see 4.3.4).*

*If, during the tests, an insulation mentioned in table 5 is subjected to a voltage exceeding the voltage occurring under normal operating conditions, and if this increase involves a higher test voltage according to 10.3, this insulation shall withstand a test for dielectric strength at the higher test voltage, unless the higher voltage is due to the short-circuiting or disconnection of a resistor, a capacitor, an RC-unit, an optocoupler or an inductor complying with the relevant requirements of clause 14.*

### 11.2 Heating

When the apparatus is operated under fault conditions, no part shall reach such a temperature that:

- there is a danger of fire to the surroundings of the apparatus;
- safety is impaired by abnormal heat developed in the apparatus.

*Compliance is checked by the tests of 11.2.1.*

*During the tests, any flame inside the apparatus shall extinguish within a period of 10 s.*

*During the test, solder may soften or become fluid as long as the apparatus does not become unsafe within the sense of this standard.*

*In addition, solder terminations shall not be used as a protective mechanism with the exception of solder which is intended to melt, for example that of THERMAL LINKS.*

### **11.2.1 Measurement of temperature rises**

*The apparatus is operated under fault conditions and the temperature rises are measured after a steady state has been attained, but not later than after 4 h operation of the apparatus.*

*During this period, the apparatus shall meet the requirements of 11.2.2 up to and including 11.2.6.*

*In the case where an applied fault condition results in the interruption of the current before steady state has been reached, the temperature rises are measured immediately after the interruption.*

*If the temperature is limited by fuses, the following additional test is carried out if necessary in relation to the characteristic of the fuse.*

*The fuse-link is short-circuited during the test and the current passing through both the fuse-link and the short-circuit link under the relevant fault condition, is measured:*

- if this current remains less than 2,1 times the rated current of the fuse-link, the temperatures are measured after a steady state has been attained;*
- if this current is either immediately 2,1 times the rated current of the fuse-link or more, or reaches this value after a period of time equal to the maximum pre-arcing time for the relevant current through the fuse-link under consideration, both the fuse-link and the short-circuit link are removed after an additional time corresponding to the maximum pre-arcing time of the fuse-link under consideration and the temperatures are measured immediately.*

*If the fuse resistance influences the current of the relevant circuit, the maximum resistance value of the fuse-link shall be taken into account when establishing the value of the current.*

NOTE The above test is based on the fusing characteristics specified in IEC 60127, which also gives the information necessary to calculate the maximum resistance value.

*In determining the current through the fuse, consideration should be given to the fact that this current may vary as a function of time. It should therefore be measured as soon as possible after switching on, taking into account any delay time for full operation of the circuit under consideration.*

*If a temperature rise exceeding the value given in table 3 is due to the short-circuiting of an insulation, the apparatus is not deemed to be unsatisfactory, but this insulation shall withstand a dielectric strength test as described in 10.3.*

*If a temperature rise exceeding the value given in table 3 is due to the short-circuiting or disconnecting of a resistor, a capacitor, an RC-unit, an optocoupler or an inductor, the apparatus is deemed to be satisfactory if the component complies with the relevant requirements of clause 14 (see 4.3.4).*

*If a temperature rise exceeding the value given in table 3 is due to the disconnection of a resistor, the overload test specified in 14.1 b) is repeated on the resistor mounted in the apparatus, including the connections made by the manufacturer. During this test, the connections shall not fail.*

### 11.2.2 ACCESSIBLE parts

The temperature rise of ACCESSIBLE parts shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item a) "Fault conditions".

### 11.2.3 Parts, other than windings, providing electrical insulation

The temperature rise of insulating parts, other than windings, the failure of which would cause an infringement of the requirements of 11.1, 11.2.2, 11.2.4 and 11.2.6, shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item b) "Fault conditions", with the following exceptions.

- For PRINTED BOARDS, the temperature rise may exceed, for a maximum period of 5 min, the values given in table 3, item b) "Fault conditions", by not more than 100 K.
- For PRINTED BOARDS withstanding the flame test described in 20.1.3, the temperature rise may exceed
  - a) the values given in table 3, item b) "Fault conditions", by not more than 100 K on one or more small areas providing that the total area does not exceed 2 cm<sup>2</sup> for each fault condition and no electric shock hazard is involved, or
  - b) for a maximum period of 5 min, the values given in table 3, item b) "Fault conditions", up to the temperature rise value given for "other parts" in table 3, item e) "Fault conditions", on one or more small areas, providing that the total area does not exceed 2 cm<sup>2</sup> for each fault condition and no electric shock hazard is involved.

*If a temperature rise value is exceeded and if there is doubt as to whether or not an electric shock hazard exists, a short-circuit is applied between the conductive parts concerned and the tests of 11.1 are repeated.*

*If conductors on PRINTED BOARDS are interrupted, peeled or loosened during the test, the apparatus is still deemed to be satisfactory if all of the following conditions are met:*

- *the PRINTED BOARD complies with 20.1.3;*
- *the interruption is not a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE;*
- *the apparatus complies with the requirements of this subclause with the interrupted conductors bridged;*
- *any peeled or loosened conductor does not reduce the CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE parts below the values specified in clause 13.*

For CLASS I apparatus, the continuity of any protective earthing connection shall be maintained; loosening of such a conductor is not allowed.

### 11.2.4 Parts acting as a support or a mechanical barrier.

The temperature rise of parts whose mechanical failure may cause an infringement of the requirements of 9.1.1 shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item c) "Fault conditions".

### 11.2.5 Windings

The temperature rise of windings shall not exceed the values given in table 3, items b) and d) "Fault conditions", with the following exceptions.

- If the temperature is limited due to the operation of replaceable or resettable protective devices, the temperature rises may be exceeded until 2 min after the operation of the device.

*In the case of windings providing protection against electric shock or where a fault could result in a fire hazard, the test is carried out three times and the winding is then subjected to the dielectric strength test of 10.3 without the humidity treatment of 10.2, starting within 1 min after the temperature rise measurement.*

*No failure is allowed.*

- If the temperature is limited due to the operation of an integral non-resettable or a non-replaceable protective device or due to the open circuiting of a winding, the temperature rises may be exceeded, but the test shall be carried out three times using new components.

*In the case of windings providing protection against electric shock or where a fault could result in a fire hazard, the winding is then in each case subjected to the dielectric strength test of 10.3 without the humidity treatment of 10.2, starting within 1 min after the temperature rise measurement.*

*No failure is allowed.*

- Higher temperature rises are allowed for windings, provided a failure of their insulation cannot cause an electric shock hazard or a fire hazard and that they are not connected to sources capable of supplying power in excess of 5 W under normal operating conditions.
- If a temperature rise value is exceeded and if there is doubt as to whether or not a hazard exists, the insulation concerned is short-circuited and the tests of 11.1 and 11.2.2 are repeated.

NOTE If the insulation is incorporated in a winding in such a way that its temperature rise cannot be measured directly, the temperature is assumed to be the same as that of the winding wire.

#### **11.2.6 Parts not subject to a limit under 11.2.1 to 11.2.5 inclusive**

According to the nature of the material, the temperature rise of the part shall not exceed the values given in table 3, item e), "Fault conditions".

## **12 Mechanical strength**

### **12.1 Complete apparatus**

The apparatus shall have adequate mechanical strength and be so constructed as to withstand such handling as may be expected during intended use.

The apparatus shall be so constructed that short-circuiting of insulations between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or parts conductively connected to those, for example by unintended loosening of screws, is prevented.

*Compliance, except for devices forming a part of the MAINS plug, is checked by the tests of 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 12.1.3, 12.1.4 and 12.1.5.*

NOTE Devices forming a part of the MAINS plug are subjected to the tests as described in 15.4.

#### **12.1.1 Bump test**

*Apparatus with a mass exceeding 7 kg are subjected to the following test.*

*The apparatus is placed on a horizontal wooden support, which is allowed to fall 50 times from a height of 5 cm onto a wooden table.*

*After the test, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.*

### 12.1.2 Vibration test

*TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS intended to be used for audio amplification of musical instruments, PORTABLE APPARATUS and apparatus having a metal enclosure, are subjected to a vibration endurance conditioning by sweeping, as specified in IEC 60068-2-6.*

*The apparatus is fastened in its intended positions of use to the vibration-generator by means of straps round the enclosure. The direction of vibration is vertical, and the severity is:*

- Duration 30 min*
- Amplitude 0,35 mm*
- Frequency range 10 Hz ... 55 Hz ... 10 Hz*
- Sweep rate approximately 1 octave/min.*

*After the test, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard, in particular, no connection or part the loosening of which might impair safety shall have loosened.*

### 12.1.3 Impact test

*The apparatus is held firmly against a rigid support and is subjected to three blows from a spring-operated impact hammer according to IEC 60068-2-75, applied with a kinetic energy just before impact of 0,5 J to every point of the enclosure that protects HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and is likely to be weak, including ventilation areas, drawers in the pulled-out position, handles, levers, switch knobs and the like, by pressing the release cone perpendicularly to the surface.*

*This impact hammer test is also made on windows, lenses, signal lamps and their covers, etc., but only if they protrude from the enclosure by more than 5 mm or if the area of the plane projection of the individual surface area exceeds 1 cm<sup>2</sup>.*

*Moreover, the non-ventilated solid areas of the enclosure that protect HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall be subjected to a single impact, specified in table 6.*

*The impact specified in table 6 shall be caused by allowing a solid, smooth, steel ball of (50 ± 1) mm in diameter and with the mass of approximately 500 g to fall freely from rest through a vertical distance, as illustrated in figure 8, and strike the enclosure with the specified impact in a direction perpendicular to the enclosure surface.*



Table 6 – Impact test on the enclosure of apparatus

Enclosure part	Impact (Joules +/-1%)
Top, sides, back, and front of PORTABLE APPARATUS or table-top apparatus.	2 J
All exposed surfaces of fixed mounted apparatus.	2 J
Top, sides, back, and front of floor-standing apparatus.	3,5 J
NOTE 1 To apply the required impact energy, the correct height is calculated by $h = E/(g \times m)$ Where: $h$ is the vertical distance in metres; $E$ is the impact energy in Joules; $g$ is the gravitational acceleration of 9,81 m/s <sup>2</sup> ; $m$ is the mass of the steel ball in kilograms. NOTE 2 For mechanical strength of picture tubes and protection against the effects of implosion, see clause 18.	

After the test, the apparatus shall withstand the dielectric strength test as specified in 10.3 and shall show no damage in the sense of this standard; in particular:

- HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not have become ACCESSIBLE,
- insulating barriers shall not have been damaged,
- those parts subjected to the impact hammer test shall show no visible cracks.

NOTE 3 Damage to the finish, small dents which do not reduce CLEARANCES or CREEPAGE DISTANCES below the specified values, cracks which are not visible to the naked eye, surface cracks in fibre-reinforced mouldings and the like are ignored.

12.1.4 Drop test

PORTABLE APPARATUS HAVING a mass of 7 kg or less are subjected to a drop test. A sample of the complete apparatus is subjected to three impacts that result from being dropped through a distance of 1,0 m onto a horizontal surface in positions likely to produce the most adverse results.

The horizontal surface consists of hardwood at least 13 mm thick, mounted on two layers of plywood each 19 mm to 20 mm thick, all supported on a concrete or equivalent non-resilient floor.

For each drop, the test sample shall strike the surface in a different position. When applicable, the sample is to be dropped with the batteries specified by the manufacturer.

Upon conclusion of the test, the apparatus need not be operational, but shall withstand the dielectric strength test as specified in 10.3, in particular:

- *HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not have become ACCESSIBLE,*
- *insulating barriers shall not have been damaged, and*
- *CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES shall not have been reduced.*

*The test criteria shall not be applied through openings in the face of the picture tube.*

#### **12.1.5 Stress relief test**

Enclosures of moulded or formed thermoplastic materials shall be so constructed that any shrinkage or distortion of the material due to release of internal stresses caused by the moulding or forming operation does not result in the exposure of hazardous parts.

*A sample consisting of the complete apparatus, or of the complete enclosure together with any supporting framework, is subjected in a circulating air oven to a temperature 10 K higher than the maximum temperature observed on the enclosure during the test of 7.1.3, but not less than 70 °C, for a period of 7 h, then permitted to cool to room temperature.*

*For large apparatus where it is impractical to test a complete enclosure, it is permitted to use a portion of the enclosure representative of the complete assembly with regard to thickness and shape, and including any mechanical support members.*

*After the test, dangerous moving parts or HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall not have become ACCESSIBLE.*

NOTE When a portion of the enclosure is tested, as a representative of the completed enclosure, it may be necessary to reassemble the apparatus to determine compliance.

#### **12.2 Fixing of actuating elements**

Actuating elements, for instance knobs, push-buttons, keys and levers, shall be so constructed and fastened that their use will not impair the protection against electric shock.

*Compliance is checked by the following tests.*

*Fixing screws, if any, are loosened and then tightened with 2/3 of the torque given in table 20 and finally loosened for 1/4 turn.*

*The actuating elements are then subjected for 1 min to a torque corresponding to a force of 100 N applied at the periphery, but not more than 1 Nm and, for 1 min, to an axial pull of 100 N. If the mass of the apparatus is less than 10 kg, the pulling force is limited to the value corresponding to the mass of the apparatus but not less than 25 N.*

*For actuating elements such as push-buttons, keys and the like, on which only a pressure is exerted during intended use and which do not protrude more than 15 mm from the surface of the apparatus, the pulling force is limited to 50 N.*

*After these tests, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.*

### 12.3 REMOTE CONTROL devices held in hand

Parts of REMOTE CONTROL devices intended to be held in hand and containing HAZARDOUS LIVE parts, shall have adequate mechanical strength and be so constructed as to withstand such handling as may be expected.

*Compliance is checked by the following test:*

*The REMOTE CONTROL device, with its flexible cord, if any, shortened to 10 cm, is tested according to IEC 60068-2-32, procedure 2.*

*The barrel is rotated 50 times if the mass of the control device is up to 250 g and 25 times if the mass is greater than 250 g.*

*After the test, the device shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.*

*Parts of cable-connected REMOTE CONTROL devices, not intended to be held in hand, are tested as a part of the attended apparatus.*

### 12.4 Drawers

Drawers which are intended to be partially pulled out from the apparatus shall have a stop of adequate mechanical strength in order to prevent HAZARDOUS LIVE parts becoming ACCESSIBLE.

*Compliance is checked by the following test:*

*The drawer is pulled out in the intended manner until the stop prevents further movement. A force of 50 N is then applied for 10 s in the most unfavourable direction.*

*After the test, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard; in particular no HAZARDOUS LIVE parts shall become ACCESSIBLE.*

### 12.5 Antenna coaxial sockets mounted on the apparatus

Antenna coaxial sockets mounted on the apparatus and incorporating parts or components which isolate HAZARDOUS LIVE parts from ACCESSIBLE parts, shall be constructed so as to withstand such mechanical stresses as may be expected in the intended use.

*Compliance is checked by the following tests, which are made in the order given.*

*After these tests, the apparatus shall show no damage in the sense of this standard.*

#### *Endurance test*

*A test plug as shown in figure 9 is inserted and withdrawn from the socket 100 times. Care is to be taken not to damage the socket intentionally during insertion and withdrawal of the test plug.*

#### *Impact test*

*A test plug as shown in figure 9 is inserted into the socket and three successive blows from the spring-operated hammer according to IEC 60068-2-75 are applied with a kinetic energy just before impact of 0,5 J to the same point on the plug in the most unfavourable direction.*

*Torque test*

*A test plug as shown in figure 9 is inserted into the socket and a force of 50 N is applied for 10 s, without jerks, at right angles to the axis of the plug, the radial direction of the force being such as to stress those parts of the socket which are likely to be weak. The force is determined by using, for example, a spring balance attached by means of the hole in the test plug.*

*This test is made 10 times.*

NOTE When antenna coaxial sockets different from IEC 60169-2 [3] are tested, a corresponding test plug of the same length is used for the tests.

**12.6 Telescoping or rod antennas**

A telescoping or rod antenna shall be provided with a minimum 6,0 mm diameter button or ball on the end.

A telescoping or rod antenna shall be provided with a guard or barrier that prevents any part of the antenna or its mounting hardware from falling into the apparatus and contacting HAZARDOUS LIVE parts in the event the antenna or any part of it were to break.

Mounting hardware refers only to parts that are used to mount the antenna or are subject to stress when the antenna is subject to movement.

**12.6.1 Physical securement**

An antenna end piece and the sections of a telescoping antenna shall be secured in such a manner as to prevent removal.

*Compliance is checked by the following test:*

*The end piece shall be subjected to a 20 N force along the major axis of the antenna for a period of 1 min. In addition, if the end piece is attached by screw threads, a loosening torque is to be applied to the end pieces of five additional samples. The torque is to be gradually applied with the rod fixed. When the specific torque is reached, it is to be maintained for no more than 15 s. The holding time for any one sample shall not be less than 5 s and the average holding time of the five samples shall not be less than 8 s.*

*The value of torque is given in table 7.*

**Table 7 – Torque values for end-piece test**

End-piece diameter mm	Torque Nm
Less than 8,0	0,3
Equal to, or greater than, 8,0	0,6

### 13 CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES

#### 13.1 General

CLEARANCES shall be so dimensioned that overvoltage transients which may enter the apparatus, and peak voltages which may be generated within the apparatus, do not break down the CLEARANCE. Detailed requirements are given in 13.3.

CREEPAGE DISTANCES shall be so dimensioned that, for a given OPERATING VOLTAGE and pollution degree, no flashover or breakdown (tracking) of insulation will occur. Detailed requirements are given in 13.4.

NOTE In order to determine the CLEARANCE, the peak value of the OPERATING VOLTAGE is measured. For the determination of the CREEPAGE DISTANCE, the r.m.s. or d.c. value of the OPERATING VOLTAGE is measured.

The methods of measuring CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES are given in annex E.

It is permitted for CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES to be divided by intervening, unconnected (floating) conductive parts, such as unused contacts of a connector, provided that the sum of the individual distances meets the specified minimum requirements (see figure E.8).

The various pollution degrees for the minimum CLEARANCE and CREEPAGE DISTANCE values given, apply as follows:

- pollution degree 1 for components and assemblies which are sealed so as to exclude dust and moisture;
- pollution degree 2 generally for apparatus covered by the scope of this standard;
- pollution degree 3 where a local internal environment within the apparatus is subject to conductive pollution or to dry non-conductive pollution which could become conductive due to expected condensation, or the apparatus is located in an area where the external environment is such that conductive pollution or dry non-conductive pollution which could become conductive, is present.

Except for insulation between parts of different polarity DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES smaller than those specified are allowed but are subject to the requirements of 4.3.1, 4.3.2 and 11.2.

#### 13.2 Determination of OPERATING VOLTAGE

*In determining the OPERATING VOLTAGE, all of the following requirements apply:*

- A1** – *the OPERATING VOLTAGE between any point in a circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and earth, and between any point in a circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and a circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, shall be assumed to be the greatest of the following:*
  - *the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE or the highest measured voltage between such points during operation at the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE, or*
  - *the upper voltage of the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE range or the highest measured voltage between such points during operation at any value within the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE range;  $\sqrt{A_1}$*
- *unearthed ACCESSIBLE conductive parts shall be assumed to be earthed;*
- *where a wire-wound component or other part is floating, i.e. not connected to a circuit which establishes its potential relative to earth, it shall be assumed to be earthed at the point by which the highest OPERATING VOLTAGE is obtained;*

- where DOUBLE INSULATION is used, the OPERATING VOLTAGE across the BASIC INSULATION shall be determined by imagining a short circuit across the SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, and vice-versa. For DOUBLE INSULATION between windings of a wire-wound component, the short circuit shall be assumed to take place at the point by which the highest OPERATING VOLTAGE is produced in the other insulation;
- except as permitted below, for insulation between two windings of a wire-wound component, the highest voltage between any two points in the two windings shall be used, taking into account external voltages to which the windings will be connected;
- except as permitted below, for insulation between a winding of a wire-wound component and another part, the highest voltage between any point on the winding and the other part shall be used.

If the insulation of a wire-wound component has different OPERATING VOLTAGES along the length of the winding, it is permitted to vary CLEARANCES, CREEPAGE DISTANCES and distances through insulation accordingly.

NOTE An example of such a construction is a 30 kV winding, consisting of multiple bobbins connected in series, and earthed at one end.

### 13.3 CLEARANCES

#### 13.3.1 General

It is permitted to use either the following method or the alternative method in annex J for a particular component or subassembly or for the whole apparatus.

NOTE 1 The advantages of annex J are as follows:

- CLEARANCES are aligned with the basic safety publication IEC 60664-1, and are therefore harmonised with other safety publications (for example for transformers);
- attenuation of transients within the apparatus is considered, including attenuation of transients in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.

NOTE 2 CLEARANCE requirements are based on the expected overvoltage transients which may enter the apparatus from the a.c. MAINS. According to IEC 60664-1, the magnitude of these transients is determined by the nominal MAINS voltage and the supply arrangements. These transients are categorised according to IEC 60664-1 into four groups as overvoltage categories I to IV (also known as installation categories I to IV).

NOTE 3 The design of solid insulation and CLEARANCES should be co-ordinated in such a way that if an incident overvoltage transient exceeds the limits of overvoltage category II, the solid insulation can withstand a higher voltage than the CLEARANCES.

For all a.c. power systems, the a.c. MAINS voltage in tables 8, 9 and 10 is the line-to-neutral voltage.



The specified CLEARANCES are not applicable to the air gap between the contacts of thermostats, THERMAL CUT-OUTS, overload protection devices, switches of microgap construction, and similar components where the CLEARANCE varies with the contacts.

NOTE 5 For air gaps between contacts of disconnect switches, see 8.19.1

NOTE 6 CLEARANCES should not be reduced below the minima specified in this standard by manufacturing tolerances or by deformation which can occur due to handling, shock and vibration likely to be encountered during manufacture, transport and normal use.

*Compliance with 13.3 is checked by measurement, taking into account annex E. The following conditions are applicable. There is no dielectric strength test to verify CLEARANCES.*

*Movable parts shall be placed in the most unfavourable position.*

*When measuring CLEARANCES from an enclosure of insulating material through a slot or opening in the enclosure, the ACCESSIBLE surface shall be considered to be conductive as if it were covered by metal foil wherever it can be touched by the test finger, according to test probe B of IEC 61032 (see 9.1.1.2), applied without appreciable force (see figure 3, point B).*

*Forces shall be applied to any point on internal parts and then to the outside of conductive enclosures, in an endeavour to reduce the CLEARANCE while taking measurements. The forces shall have a value of*

- 2 N for internal parts;
- 30 N for enclosures.

*The force shall be applied to the enclosure by means of the rigid test finger according to IEC 61032, test probe 11.*

**[A<sub>1</sub>]** CLEARANCES between a loudspeaker voice coil and adjacent conductive parts shall be disregarded. **[A<sub>1</sub>]**

### 13.3.2 CLEARANCES in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

CLEARANCES in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS shall comply with the minimum dimensions in table 8 and, where appropriate, table 9.

Table 8 is applicable to apparatus that will not be subjected to transients exceeding overvoltage category II according to IEC 60664-1. The appropriate MAINS transient voltages are given in parentheses in each nominal a.c. MAINS voltage column. If higher transients are expected, additional protection might be necessary in the supply to the apparatus or in the installation.

NOTE 1 Annex J provides an alternative design method for higher transient voltages.

For circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS operating on nominal a.c. MAINS voltages up to 300 V, if the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE in the circuit exceeds the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage, the minimum CLEARANCE for the insulation under consideration is the sum of the following two values:

- the minimum CLEARANCE value from table 8 for an OPERATING VOLTAGE equal to the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage; and
- the appropriate additional CLEARANCE value from table 9.

NOTE 2 For the purpose of the use of table 8, it is assumed that the OPERATING VOLTAGE is equal to the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage.

For an OPERATING VOLTAGE to be used in determining CLEARANCES for circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS in accordance with table 8:

- the peak value of any superimposed ripple on a d.c. voltage which exceeds that permitted in 2.3.3, shall be included;
- non-repetitive transients (due, for example, to atmospheric disturbances) shall not be taken into account;

NOTE 3 It is assumed that any such non-repetitive transients in a circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS will not exceed the MAINS transient voltage of the circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS.

- the voltage of any circuit not HAZARDOUS LIVE or TNV CIRCUIT (including ringing voltage) shall be regarded as zero;

and in accordance with table 9, where appropriate, for peak OPERATING VOLTAGES exceeding the values of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage, the maximum peak OPERATING VOLTAGE shall be used.

NOTE 4 The total CLEARANCES obtained by the use of table 9 lie between the values required for homogeneous and inhomogeneous fields. As a result, these CLEARANCES may not assure conformance with the appropriate dielectric strength test in case of fields which are substantially inhomogeneous.

NOTE 5 Use of CLEARANCE – tables 8 and 9:

Select the appropriate column in table 8 for the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage and pollution degree. Select the row appropriate to an OPERATING VOLTAGE equal to the a.c. MAINS voltage. Note the minimum CLEARANCE requirement.

Go to table 9. Select the appropriate column for the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage and pollution degree and choose the row in that column which covers the actual peak OPERATING VOLTAGE. Read the additional CLEARANCE required from one of the two right-hand columns and add this to the minimum CLEARANCE from table 8 to give the total minimum CLEARANCE.

**Table 8 – Minimum CLEARANCES for insulation in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and between such circuits and circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS**

*CLEARANCES in millimetres*

OPERATING VOLTAGE up to and including		Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage ≤150 V (MAINS transient voltage 1 500 V)		Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage >150 V ≤300 V (MAINS transient voltage 2 500 V)		Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage >300 V ≤600 V (MAINS transient voltage 4 000 V)	
Voltage peak or d.c.  V	Voltage r.m.s. (sinu- soidal)  V	Pollution degrees 1 and 2		Pollution degree 3		Pollution degrees 1, 2 and 3	
		B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R
210	150	1,0 (0,5)	2,0 (1,0)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)
420	300	B/S 2,0 (1,5) R 4,0 (3,0)				3,2 (3,0)	6,4 (6,0)
840	600	B/S 3,2 (3,0) R 6,4 (6,0)					
1 400	1 000	B/S 4,2 R 6,4					
2 800	2 000	B/S/R 8,4					
7 000	5 000	B/S/R 17, 5					
9 800	7 000	B/S/R 25					
14 000	10 000	B/S/R 37					
28 000	20 000	B/S/R 80					
42 000	30 000	B/S/R 130					

NOTE 1 The values in the table are applicable to basic (B), supplementary (S) and reinforced (R) insulation.

NOTE 2 The values in parentheses are applicable to basic, supplementary or reinforced insulation only if manufacturing is subjected to a quality control programme (an example for such a programme is given in annex M). In particular, double and reinforced insulation shall be subjected to routine tests for dielectric strength.

NOTE 3 For operating voltages between 420 V (peak) or d.c. and 42 000 V (peak) or d.c., linear interpolation between the nearest two points and for values exceeding 42 000 (peak) or d.c. extrapolation is permitted, the calculated spacing being rounded up to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.

NOTE 4 For explanation of the pollution degrees, see 13.1.



**Table 9 – Additional CLEARANCES for insulation in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS with peak OPERATING VOLTAGES exceeding the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage and between such circuits and circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS**

Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage ≤150 V		Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage > 150 V ≤ 300 V	Additional CLEARANCE mm	
Pollution degrees 1 and 2	Pollution degree 3	Pollution degrees 1, 2 and 3	BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION	REINFORCED INSULATION
Maximum OPERATING VOLTAGE V (peak)	Maximum OPERATING VOLTAGE V (peak)	Maximum OPERATING VOLTAGE V (peak)		
210 (210)	210 (210)	420 (420)	0	0
298 (288)	294 (293)	493 (497)	0,1	0,2
386 (366)	379 (376)	567 (575)	0,2	0,4
474 (444)	463 (459)	640 (652)	0,3	0,6
562 (522)	547 (541)	713 (729)	0,4	0,8
650 (600)	632 (624)	787 (807)	0,5	1,0
738 (678)	715 (707)	860 (884)	0,6	1,2
826 (756)	800 (790)	933 (961)	0,7	1,4
914 (839)		1 006 (1 039)	0,8	1,6
1 002 (912)		1 080 (1 116)	0,9	1,8
1 090 (990)		1 153 (1 193)	1,0	2,0
		1 226 (1 271)	1,1	2,2
		1 300 (1 348)	1,2	2,4
		– (1 425)	1,3	2,6

NOTE 1 The values in parentheses shall be used when the values in parentheses in table 8 are used in accordance with note 2 of table 8.

NOTE 2 For OPERATING VOLTAGES above those shown in the table, linear extrapolation is allowed up to and including 2 000 V. For higher voltages reference should be made to IEC 60664-1.

NOTE 3 Linear interpolation between the nearest two points is permitted, the calculated spacing being rounded up to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.

NOTE 4 For explanation of the pollution degrees, see 13.1.

### 13.3.3 CLEARANCES in circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

CLEARANCES in circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS shall comply with the minimum dimensions of table 10.

For an OPERATING VOLTAGE to be used in determining CLEARANCES for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS in accordance with table 10:

- the peak value of any superimposed ripple on a d.c. voltage which exceeds that permitted in 2.3.3, shall be included;
- the peak value shall be used for non-sinusoidal voltages.

Circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS will normally be overvoltage category I if the MAINS is overvoltage category II; the maximum transients in overvoltage category I for various a.c. MAINS voltages are shown in the column headings of table 10. However, a floating circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS in an apparatus that has anywhere a connector (for example antenna, signal input) that could be earthed, shall be subjected to the requirements for circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS in tables 8 and 9 unless it is in apparatus with a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL and either

- the floating circuit is separated from the circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS by an earthed metal screen; or
- transients on the circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS are below the permitted maximum value for overvoltage category I (for example due to being attenuated by connecting a component, such as a capacitor, between the circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and earth). See 13.3.4 for the method of measuring the transient level.

NOTE If the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE is known, the known value should be used.

If the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE is not known, an assumed transient rating of 800 V (peak) should be used for TNV-2 CIRCUITS and 1,5 kV (peak) for TNV-1 CIRCUITS and TNV-3 CIRCUITS.

If it is known that the incoming transients are attenuated within the apparatus, the value to be used should be determined in accordance with 13.3.4 b).

Table 10 – Minimum CLEARANCES in circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS

CLEARANCES in millimetres

OPERATING VOLTAGE up to and including		Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage $\leq 150$ V (transient rating for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS 800 V) <sup>b</sup>				Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage $>150$ V $\leq 300$ V (transient rating for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS 1 500 V) <sup>b</sup>				Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage $>300$ V $\leq 600$ V (transient rating for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS 2 500 V) <sup>b</sup>		Circuits not subject to transient overvoltages <sup>a</sup>	
Voltage peak or d.c. V	Voltage r.m.s. sinusoidal V	Pollution degrees 1 and 2		Pollution degree 3		Pollution degrees 1 and 2		Pollution degree 3		Pollution degrees 1, 2 and 3		Pollution degrees 1 and 2 only	
		B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R	B/S	R
71	50	0,7 (0,2)	1,4 (0,4)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	1,0 (0,5)	2,0 (1,0)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	0,4 (0,2)	0,8 (0,4)
140	100	0,7 (0,2)	1,4 (0,4)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	1,0 (0,5)	2,0 (1,0)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	0,7 (0,2)	1,4 (0,4)
210	150	0,9 (0,2)	1,8 (0,4)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	1,0 (0,5)	2,0 (1,0)	1,3 (0,8)	2,6 (1,6)	2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	0,7 (0,2)	1,4 (0,4)
280	200	B/S 1,4 (0,8) R 2,8 (1,6)								2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	1,1 (0,2)	2,2 (0,4)
420	300	B/S 1,9 (1,0) R 3,8 (2,0)								2,0 (1,5)	4,0 (3,0)	1,4 (0,2)	2,8 (0,4)
700	500	B/S 2,5								R 5,0			
840	600	B/S 3,2								R 5,0			
1 400	1 000	B/S 4,2								R 5,0			
2 800	2 000	B/S/R 8,4								<sup>c</sup>			
7 000	5 000	B/S/R 17,5								<sup>c</sup>			
9 800	7 000	B/S/R 25								<sup>c</sup>			
14 000	10 000	B/S/R 37								<sup>c</sup>			
28 000	20 000	B/S/R 80								<sup>c</sup>			
42 000	30 000	B/S/R 130								<sup>c</sup>			

NOTE 1 The values in the table are applicable to BASIC (B), SUPPLEMENTARY (S) and REINFORCED (R) INSULATION.

NOTE 2 The values in parentheses are applicable to BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY or REINFORCED INSULATION only if manufacturing is subjected to a quality control programme (an example for such a programme is given in annex M). In particular, DOUBLE and REINFORCED INSULATION shall be subjected to ROUTINE TESTS for dielectric strength.

NOTE 3 For OPERATING VOLTAGES between 420 V (peak) or d.c. and 42 000 V (peak) or d.c., linear interpolation is permitted between the nearest two points, the calculated spacing being rounded up to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.

For OPERATING VOLTAGES exceeding 42 000 V (peak) or d.c., linear extrapolation is permitted, the calculated spacing being rounded up to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.

NOTE 4 For explanation of the pollution degrees, see 13.1.

<sup>a</sup> The values are applicable to d.c. circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS which are reliably connected to earth and have capacitive filtering which limits the peak-to-peak ripple to 10 % of the d.c. voltage.

<sup>b</sup> Where transients in the apparatus exceed this value, the appropriate higher CLEARANCE shall be used.

<sup>c</sup> Compliance with a CLEARANCE value of 8,4 mm or greater is not required if the CLEARANCE path is

– entirely through air, or

– wholly or partly along the surface of an insulating material of material group I (see 13.4);

and the insulation involved passes a dielectric strength test according to 10.3 using:

– an a.c. test voltage whose r.m.s. value is equal to 1,06 times the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE, or

– a d.c. test voltage equal to the peak value of the a.c. test voltage prescribed above.

If the CLEARANCE path is partly along the surface of a material that is not material group I, the dielectric strength test is conducted across the air gap only.

## Measurement of transient voltages

*The following tests are conducted only where it is required to determine whether or not transient voltages across the CLEARANCE in any circuit are lower than normal, due, for example, to the effect of a filter in the apparatus. The transient voltage across the CLEARANCE is measured using the following test procedure, and the CLEARANCE shall be based on the measured value.*

*During the tests, the apparatus is connected to its separate SUPPLY APPARATUS, if any, but is not connected to the MAINS, nor to any network, for example TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS, and any surge suppressors in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS are disconnected.*

*A voltage measuring device is connected across the CLEARANCE in question.*

### a) Transients due to MAINS overvoltages

*To measure the reduced level of transients due to MAINS overvoltages, the impulse test generator of annex K is used to generate 1,2/50  $\mu$ s impulses, with  $U_C$  equal to the MAINS transient voltage given in the column headings of table 8.*

*Three to six impulses of alternating polarity, with intervals of at least 1 s between impulses, are applied between each of the following points where relevant:*

- *line-to-line;*
- *all line conductors joined together and neutral;*
- *all line conductors joined together and protective earth;*
- *neutral and protective earth.*

### b) Transients due to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK overvoltages

*To measure the reduced level of transients due to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK overvoltages, the impulse test generator of annex K is used to generate 10/700  $\mu$ s impulses, with  $U_C$  equal to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE.*

*If the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE is not known for the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK in question, it shall be taken as*

- *1 500  $V_{peak}$  if the circuit connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is a TNV-1 CIRCUIT or a TNV-3 CIRCUIT; and*
- *800  $V_{peak}$  if the circuit connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is a TNV-0 CIRCUIT or a TNV-2 CIRCUIT.*

*Three to six impulses of alternating polarity, with intervals of at least 1 s between impulses, are applied between each of the following TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK connection points:*

- *each pair of TERMINALS (for example, A and B or tip and ring) in an interface;*
- *all TERMINALS of a single interface type joined together and earth.*

## 13.4 CREEPAGE DISTANCES

CREEPAGE DISTANCES shall be not less than the appropriate minimum values specified in table 11, taking into account the value of the OPERATING VOLTAGE, the pollution degree and the material group.

If the CREEPAGE DISTANCE derived from table 11 is less than the applicable CLEARANCE as determined in 13.3 or annex J, then the value for that CLEARANCE shall be applied for the minimum CREEPAGE DISTANCE.

It is permitted to use minimum CREEPAGE DISTANCES equal to the applicable CLEARANCES for glass, mica, ceramic or similar materials.

For the OPERATING VOLTAGE to be used in determining CREEPAGE DISTANCES:

- the actual r.m.s. or d.c. value shall be used;  
If the r.m.s. value is measured, care shall be taken that measuring instruments give true r.m.s. readings of non-sinusoidal waveforms as well as sinusoidal waveforms.
- if the d.c. value is used, any superimposed ripple shall not be taken into account;
- short-term conditions (for example, cadenced ringing signals in TNV CIRCUITS) shall not be taken into account;
- short-term disturbances (for example transients) shall not be taken into account.

When determining the OPERATING VOLTAGE for a TNV CIRCUIT connected to a TELECOM-MUNICATION NETWORK whose characteristics are not known, the normal OPERATING VOLTAGES shall be assumed to be the following values:

- 60 V d.c. for TNV-1 CIRCUITS;
- 120 V d.c. for TNV-2 CIRCUITS and TNV-3 CIRCUITS.

Material groups are classified as follows:

Material group I	$600 \leq \text{CTI}$ (comparative tracking index)
Material group II	$400 \leq \text{CTI} < 600$
Material group IIIa	$175 \leq \text{CTI} < 400$
Material group IIIb	$100 \leq \text{CTI} < 175$

The material group is verified by evaluation of the test data for the material according to IEC 60112 using 50 drops of solution A.

If the material group is not known, material group IIIb shall be assumed. If a CTI of 175 or greater is needed, and the data is not available, the material group can be established with a test for proof tracking index (PTI) as detailed in IEC 60112. A material may be included in a group if its PTI established by these tests is equal to, or greater than, the lower value of the CTI specified for the group.

Table 11 – Minimum CREEPAGE DISTANCES

CREEPAGE DISTANCES in millimetres							
OPERATING VOLTAGE up to and including  V r.m.s. or d.c.	BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION						
	Pollution degree 1	Pollution degree 2			Pollution degree 3		
	Material group	Material group			Material group		
	I, II, IIIa or IIIb	I	II	IIIa or IIIb	I	II	IIIa or IIIb
≤ 50	a	0,6	0,9	1,2	1,5	1,7	1,9
100		0,7	1,0	1,4	1,8	2,0	2,2
125		0,8	1,1	1,5	1,9	2,1	2,4
150		0,8	1,1	1,6	2,0	2,2	2,5
200		1,0	1,4	2,0	2,5	2,8	3,2
250		1,3	1,8	2,5	3,2	3,6	4,0
300		1,6	2,2	3,2	4,0	4,5	5,0
400		2,0	2,8	4,0	5,0	5,6	6,3
600		3,2	4,5	6,3	8,0	9,6	10,0
800		4,0	5,6	8,0	10,0	11,0	12,5
1 000	5,0	7,1	10,0	12,5	14,0	16,0	
NOTE 1 Linear interpolation is permitted between the nearest two points, the calculated spacing being rounded to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.							
NOTE 2 For higher voltages table 4 of IEC 60664-1 may be used.							
NOTE 3 For REINFORCED INSULATION, the values for CREEPAGE DISTANCE are twice the values for BASIC INSULATION in this table.							
NOTE 4 For explanation of the pollution degrees, see 13.1.							
a No minimum CREEPAGE DISTANCES are specified for insulation in pollution degree 1. The minimum CLEARANCES apply, as determined in 13.3 or annex J.							

Compliance is checked by measurement, taking into account annex E.

The following conditions are applicable.

Movable parts are placed in their most unfavourable positions.

For apparatus incorporating ordinary non-detachable power supply cords, CREEPAGE DISTANCE measurements are made with supply conductors of the largest cross-sectional area specified in 15.3.5, and also without conductors.

When measuring CREEPAGE DISTANCES from an enclosure of insulating material through a slot or opening in the enclosure, the ACCESSIBLE surface is considered to be conductive as if it were covered by metal foil wherever it can be touched by the test finger, according to test probe B of IEC 61032 (see 9.1.1.2), applied without appreciable force (see figure 3, point B).

**A1** NOTE The presence of adhesive on insulation tapes should be considered in determining the CTI. **A1**

### 13.5 PRINTED BOARDS

**13.5.1** The minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES between conductors, one of which may be CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, on PRINTED BOARDS complying with the pull-off and peel strength requirements of IEC 60249-2 are given in figure 10, and for which the following applies:

- these distances only apply as far as overheating is concerned (see 11.2) to the conductors themselves, not to mounted components or associated solder connections.
- coatings of lacquer or the like, except coatings according to IEC 60664-3, are ignored when measuring the distances.

**13.5.2** For type B coated PRINTED BOARDS, insulation between conductors shall comply with the requirements of IEC 60664-3. This applies only to BASIC INSULATION.

NOTE For such PRINTED BOARDS, CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES under the coating do not exist.

### 13.6 Jointed insulation

Distances between conductive parts along uncemented joints shall be considered as CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES for which the values of 13.3 or annex J and 13.4 apply.

For reliably cemented joints, complying with the following tests, CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES do not exist. In this case only 8.8 applies.

*Compliance is checked by inspection, measurement and test.*

*For this test, enamelled winding wires, if any, are replaced by uninsulated wires.*

*The materials are considered to be cemented together, if they withstand the following test.*

*Three apparatus, components or subassemblies are subjected 10 times to the following temperature cycle:*

- 68 h at  $(X \pm 2) ^\circ\text{C}$ ,
- 1 h at  $(25 \pm 2) ^\circ\text{C}$ ,
- 2 h at  $(0 \pm 2) ^\circ\text{C}$ ,
- 1 h at  $(25 \pm 2) ^\circ\text{C}$ ,

*whereby X is the highest temperature measured under normal operating conditions on the apparatus, component or subassembly under consideration plus 10 K with a minimum of 85 °C.*

**[A<sub>1</sub>]** *One apparatus, component or subassembly is subjected to the relevant dielectric strength test of 10.3, without the humidity treatment of 10.2, however, the test voltage is multiplied by 1,6.*

*This test is performed immediately after the 68 h temperature conditioning of the last cycle.*

*Upon conclusion of the complete number of cycles, the two remaining apparatus, components or subassemblies are subjected to the relevant dielectric strength test of 10.3; however, the test voltages are multiplied by 1,6.*

NOTE The test voltage is higher than the normal test voltage in order to ensure that, if the surfaces are not cemented together, a breakdown occurs. **[A<sub>1</sub>]**

13.7 Enclosed and sealed parts

For apparatus, subassemblies or components, not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and which are enclosed, enveloped or hermetically sealed against ingress of dirt and moisture, the minimum internal CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES may be reduced to the values as given in table 12.

NOTE 1 Examples of such constructions include hermetically sealed metal boxes, adhesive sealed plastic boxes, parts enveloped in a dip coat or by type A coatings according to IEC 60664-3 of PRINTED BOARDS.

NOTE 2 This reduction is permitted for protection against electric shock and overheating.

Table 12 – Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES  
(enclosed, enveloped or hermetically sealed constructions)

OPERATING VOLTAGE up to and including V (peak) a.c. or V d.c.	Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES  mm
35	0,2
45	0,2
56	0,3
70	0,3
90	0,4
110	0,4
140	0,5
180	0,7
225	0,8
280	1,0
360	1,1
450	1,3
560	1,6
700	1,9
900	2,3
1 120	2,6
1 400	3,2
1 800	4,2
2 250	5,6
2 800	7,5
3 600	10,0
4 500	12,5
5 600	16,0
7 000	20,0
9 000	25,0
11 200	32,0
14 000	40,0

NOTE 1 The values are applicable to both BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

NOTE 2 The values for REINFORCED INSULATION shall be twice the values in the table.

NOTE 3 A minimum CTI (comparative tracking index) of 100 is required for the insulating materials used. The CTI rating refers to the value obtained in accordance with IEC 60112, solution A.

NOTE 4 Linear interpolation between the nearest two points is allowed, the calculated spacing being rounded to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.



*Compliance is checked by inspection, measurement and by subjecting the apparatus, subassembly or component 10 times to the following temperature cycle:*

- 68 h at  $(Y \pm 2) ^\circ\text{C}$ ,
- 1 h at  $(25 \pm 2) ^\circ\text{C}$ ,
- 2 h at  $(0 \pm 2) ^\circ\text{C}$ ,
- 1 h at  $(25 \pm 2) ^\circ\text{C}$ ,

*whereby Y is the highest temperature measured under normal operating conditions of the apparatus, subassembly or component under consideration, with a minimum of 85 °C. In case of transformers, Y is the highest winding temperature measured under normal operating conditions, plus 10 K, with a minimum of 85 °C.*

*The apparatus, subassembly or component is then subjected to the dielectric strength test of 10.3.*

*The tests are carried out on three samples.*

*No failure is allowed.*

**13.8** The distances between conductive parts internal to apparatus, subassemblies or components which are treated with insulating compound filling all voids, so that CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES do not exist, shall be subject only to the requirements of 8.8.

NOTE Examples of such treatment include potting, encapsulation and vacuum impregnation.

*Compliance is checked in accordance with 13.7, taking into account 8.8 together with the following:*

*A visual inspection shall be carried out to determine that there are no cracks in the encapsulating, impregnating or other material, that coatings have not loosened or shrunk, and after sectioning the sample, that there are no significant voids in the material.*

## 14 Components

NOTE 1 Where components are part of a range of values it is usually not necessary to test every value within that range. If this range of values consists of several technologically homogeneous subranges, the samples should be representative of each of these subranges. Moreover, it is recommended, where possible, to make use of the concept of structurally similar components.

NOTE 2 When a certain flammability category according to IEC 60707 is required, reference is made to annex G with respect to alternative test methods.

NOTE 3 When no flammability requirements are specified in this clause, reference is made to 20.1.1.



### 14.1 Resistors

Resistors, the short-circuiting or disconnecting of which would cause an infringement of the requirements for operation under fault conditions (see clause 11) and resistors bridging contact gaps of MAINS SWITCHES, shall have an adequate stable resistance value under overload.

Such resistors shall be positioned inside the enclosure of the apparatus.

*Compliance is checked by test a) or test b), carried out on a sample of 10 specimens.*

**A1** Before test a) or b), the resistance of each sample is measured and the sample is then subjected to the damp heat test according to IEC 60068-2-78 with the following severity parameters:

- Temperature:  $(40 \pm 2) ^\circ\text{C}$ ,
- Humidity:  $(93 \pm 3) \% \text{ RH}$ ,
- Test duration: 21 days. **A1**

For resistors connected between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, the CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES between the terminations shall comply with the requirements of clause 13 for REINFORCED INSULATION.

Resistors with internal end-lead terminations are allowed only if the internal spacings are clearly and precisely defined.

*Compliance is checked by measurement and inspection.*

## 14.2 Capacitors and RC-units

Where reference is made to the tests specified in IEC 60384-14, table II, these tests are supplemented as follows:

The duration of the damp heat steady-state test as specified in 4.12 of IEC 60384-14, shall be 21 days.

NOTE Reference is made to IEC 60384-14, including amendment 1, irrespective of whether the capacitor or RC-unit is used for electromagnetic interference suppression purposes or not.

**14.2.1** Capacitors or RC-units, the short-circuiting or disconnecting of which would cause an infringement of the requirements under fault conditions with regard to electric shock hazard shall:

- a) withstand the tests for subclass Y2 or Y4 capacitors or RC-units as specified in IEC 60384-14, table II.

Subclass Y2 capacitors or RC-units shall be used for apparatus with rated MAINS voltages  $>150 \text{ V}$  and  $\leq 250 \text{ V}$  with respect to earth or neutral respectively.

Subclass Y4 capacitors or RC-units may be used only for apparatus with rated MAINS voltages  $\leq 150 \text{ V}$  with respect to earth or neutral respectively.

- b) withstand the tests for subclass Y1 or Y2 capacitors or RC-units as specified in IEC 60384-14, table II.

Subclass Y1 capacitors or RC-units shall be used for apparatus with rated MAINS voltages  $>150$  V and  $\leq 250$  V with respect to earth or neutral respectively.

Subclass Y2 capacitors or RC-units may be used only for apparatus with rated MAINS voltages  $\leq 150$  V with respect to earth or neutral respectively.

NOTE For the application of a) and b), reference is made to 8.5 and 8.6.

Such capacitors or RC-units shall be positioned inside the enclosure of the apparatus.

**14.2.2** Capacitors or RC-units having their terminations DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, shall withstand the tests for subclass X1 or X2 capacitors or RC-units as specified in IEC 60384-14, table II.

Subclass X1 capacitors or RC-units shall be used for PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS intended for connection to a MAINS with a nominal voltage  $>150$  V and  $\leq 250$  V with respect to earth or neutral respectively.

Subclass X2 capacitors or RC-units may be used for all other applications.

NOTE 1 Y2 capacitors or RC-units may be used instead of X1 or X2 capacitors or RC-units.

NOTE 2 Y4 capacitors or RC-units may be used instead of X2 capacitors or RC-units in applications  $\leq 150$  V.

**14.2.3** Capacitors or RC-units across a secondary winding of a transformer with MAINS frequency output, the short-circuiting of which would cause an infringement of the requirements with regard to overheating, shall withstand the tests for subclass X2 capacitors or RC-units as specified in IEC 60384-14, table II.

The characteristics of the capacitors or RC-units shall be appropriate for their function in the apparatus under normal operating conditions.

**14.2.4** (Intentionally kept free for future requirements for capacitors or RC-units others than those mentioned in 14.2.1 to 14.2.3)

#### **14.2.5 Capacitors or RC-units not covered by 14.2.1 to 14.2.4**

NOTE If X1 or X2 capacitors or RC-units are used in places other than required in 14.2.2, these X1 or X2 capacitors or RC-units are considered to be covered by 14.2.2 as well.

- a) Capacitors or RC-units with a volume exceeding  $1\,750\text{ mm}^3$  used in circuits where, when the capacitor or RC-unit is short-circuited, the current through the short circuit exceeds 0,2 A, shall comply with the passive flammability requirements according to 4.38 of IEC 60384-1, flammability category B or better.
- b) When the distance between POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES and capacitors or RC-units with a volume exceeding  $1\,750\text{ mm}^3$  does not exceed the values specified in table 13, then these capacitors or RC-units shall comply with the relevant passive flammability requirements according to 4.38 of IEC 60384-1, as specified in table 13 or better. No passive flammability requirements apply to these capacitors and RC-units when they are shielded by a barrier as specified in 20.1.4 from the POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE.

**A1** This subclause is not applicable to metal-cased capacitors and RC-units. Thin coating or tubing in such a case is ignored. **A1**

Table 13 – Flammability category related to distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES

Open circuit voltage of the POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE  V (peak) a.c. or d.c.	Distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES to the capacitor or RC-unit downwards or sideways less than <sup>a</sup> mm	Distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES to the capacitor or RC-unit upwards less than <sup>a</sup> mm	Passive flammability category according to IEC 60384-1
>50 and ≤4 000	13	50	B
>4 000	see 20.2		
<sup>a</sup> See figure 13.			

Compliance is checked according to 4.38 of IEC 60384-1.

14.3 Inductors and windings

Inductors and windings shall comply with

- either the requirements of IEC 61558-1 and the relevant parts of IEC 61558-2, with the following addition:  
Insulating material of inductors and windings, except in thin sheet form, shall comply with 20.1.4;
- or with the requirements given below.

NOTE Examples of relevant parts of IEC 61558-2 are:  
IEC 61558-2-1 [11]: SEPARATING TRANSFORMERS  
IEC 61558-2-4 [12]: ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS  
IEC 61558-2-6 [13]: Safety ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS  
IEC 61558-2-17: Transformers for switch mode power supplies

14.3.1 Marking

Inductors the failure of which can impair the safety of an apparatus, for example ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS, shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or trademark and with a type or catalogue reference. The manufacturer's name and the type reference may be replaced by a code number.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

14.3.2 General

NOTE Depending on the application in the apparatus attention is drawn to the requirements of 10.1 for the insulation of windings.

ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS shall comply with

- 14.3.3 and
- 14.3.4.1 or 14.3.4.2 and
- 14.3.5.1 or 14.3.5.2.

SEPARATING TRANSFORMERS shall comply with

- 14.3.3 and
- 14.3.4.3 and
- 14.3.5.1 or 14.3.5.2.

Other windings, for example induction motors where the power is supplied to the stator only, degaussing coils, relay coils, autotransformers, shall comply with 14.3.3.1, 14.3.5.1 and 14.3.5.2 as far as applicable.

Transformers for Switch Mode Power Supplies (SMPS) shall comply with the requirements of IEC 61558-1 and IEC 61558-2-17, or

with the requirements for ISOLATING TRANSFORMERS or for SEPARATING TRANSFORMERS as given above.

Insulating material of inductors and windings, except in thin sheet form, shall comply with 20.1.4.

### 14.3.3 Constructional requirements

#### 14.3.3.1 All windings

CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES shall comply with the requirements of clause 13.

#### 14.3.3.2 Designs with more than one winding

When an insulation barrier consisting of an uncemented pushed-on partition wall is used, CREEPAGE DISTANCES are measured through the joint. If the joint is covered by an adhesive bonding tape in accordance with IEC 60454, one layer of adhesive bonding tape is required on each side of the wall in order to reduce the risk of tape folding over during production.

The input and output windings shall be electrically separated from each other, and the construction shall be such that there is no possibility of any connection between these windings, either directly or indirectly through conductive parts.

In particular, precautions shall be taken to prevent:

- undue displacement of input or output windings, or the turns thereof;
- undue displacement of internal wiring, or wires for external connections;
- undue displacement of parts of windings, or of internal wiring, in the event of rupture of wires, or loosening of connections;
- wires, screws, washers and the like from bridging any part of the insulation between the input and output windings, including the connections of windings, should they loosen or become free.

The last turn of each winding shall be retained in a reliable manner, for example by tape, suitable bonding agent, or retention shall be implied by process technology.

Where cheekless bobbins are used, the end turns of each layer shall be retained in a reliable manner. Each layer can, for example, be interleaved with adequate insulation material projecting beyond the end turns of each layer and, moreover, either

- the windings shall be impregnated with hard-baking or cold-setting material, substantially filling the intervening spaces and effectively sealing-off the end turns, or
- the windings shall be held together by means of insulating material, or
- the windings shall, for example, be fixed by process technology.

NOTE It is not expected that two independent fixings will become loose at the same time.

Where serrated tape is used, the serrated part is disregarded as insulation.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

#### 14.3.4 Separation between windings

##### 14.3.4.1 Windings of CLASS II construction

The separation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and windings intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts shall consist of DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION according to 8.8, except that for coil formers and partition walls providing REINFORCED INSULATION a thickness of at least 0,4 mm without additional requirements applies.

Where an intermediate conductive part, for example the iron core, not intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts is located between the relevant windings, the insulation between these windings via the intermediate conductive part shall consist of DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION as mentioned above.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by measurement.*

##### 14.3.4.2 Windings of CLASS I construction

The separation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and windings intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE parts may consist of BASIC INSULATION plus PROTECTIVE SCREENING only if all of the following conditions are complied with:

- the insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and the protective screen shall comply with the requirements for BASIC INSULATION according to 8.8 dimensioned for the HAZARDOUS LIVE voltage;
- the insulation between the protective screen and non-HAZARDOUS LIVE windings shall comply with the requirements for dielectric strength according to table 5, item 2;
- the protective screen intended to be connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact shall be positioned between the input and output windings in such a way that the screen effectively prevents the input voltage being applied to any output winding in case of an insulation fault;
- the protective screen shall consist of a metal foil or of a wire wound screen extending at least the full width of one of the windings adjacent to the screen. A wire wound screen shall be wound tight without space between the turns;
- the protective screen shall be so arranged that its ends cannot touch each other nor touch simultaneously an iron core, in order to prevent overheating due to creation of a shorted winding;
- the protective screen and its lead-out wire shall have a cross-sectional area sufficient to ensure that if a breakdown of insulation should occur, a fusing or interrupting device will open the circuit before the screen or the lead-out wire is destroyed;
- the lead-out wire shall be connected to the protective screen in a reliable manner, for example by soldering, welding, riveting or crimping.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by measurement.*

##### 14.3.4.3 Windings of separating construction

The separation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and windings intended to be connected to parts separated from ACCESSIBLE parts by SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION only shall consist of at least BASIC INSULATION according to 8.8.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by measurement.*

### 14.3.5 Insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE parts

#### 14.3.5.1 Windings of CLASS II construction

The insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and ACCESSIBLE parts or parts intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, for example an iron core,

and

the insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts, for example an iron core connected to a HAZARDOUS LIVE winding, and windings intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts,

shall consist of DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION according to 8.8, except that for coil formers and partition walls providing REINFORCED INSULATION, a thickness of at least 0,4 mm without additional requirements applies.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

#### 14.3.5.2 Windings of CLASS I construction

The insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE windings and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or parts intended to be connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact, for example an iron core,

and

the insulation between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts, for example an iron core separated from a HAZARDOUS LIVE winding by functional insulation only, and winding wires or foils of protective screens intended to be connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact,

shall consist of BASIC INSULATION according to 8.8.

The winding wires of windings intended to be connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact shall have a current carrying capacity sufficient to ensure that, if a breakdown of insulation should occur, a fusing or interrupting device will open the circuit before the winding is destroyed.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

### 14.4 High voltage components and assemblies

NOTE For high voltage cables, reference is made to 20.1.2.

Components operating at voltages exceeding 4 kV (peak) and spark gaps provided to protect against overvoltages, if not otherwise covered by 20.1.3, shall not give rise to danger of fire to the surroundings of the apparatus, or to any other hazard within the sense of this standard.

*Compliance is checked by meeting the requirement for category V-1 according to IEC 60707 or by the test of 14.4.1 and 14.4.2 respectively, in which no failure is allowed.*

#### 14.4.1 High voltage transformers and multipliers

*Three specimens of the transformer with one or more high-voltage windings or of the high-voltage multipliers are subjected to the treatment specified under item a), followed by the test specified under item b).*

##### a) Preconditioning

*For transformers, a power of 10 W (d.c. or a.c. at MAINS frequency) is initially supplied to the high-voltage winding. This power is sustained for 2 min, after which it is increased by successive steps of 10 W at 2 min intervals to 40 W.*

*The treatment lasts 8 min or is terminated as soon as interruption of the winding or appreciable splitting of the protective covering occurs.*

NOTE 1 Certain transformers are so designed that this preconditioning cannot be carried out. In such cases, only the test of item b) below is applied.

*For each specimen of a high-voltage multiplier, its output shall be short-circuited and a voltage taken from an appropriate high-voltage transformer shall be applied to its input.*

*The input voltage is adjusted so that the short-circuit current is initially  $(25 \pm 5)$  mA. This is maintained for 30 min or is terminated as soon as any interruption of the circuit or appreciable splitting of the protective covering occurs.*

NOTE 2 Where the design of a high-voltage multiplier is such that a short-circuit current of 25 mA cannot be obtained, a preconditioning current is used, which represents the maximum attainable current, determined either by the design of the multiplier or by its conditions of use in a particular apparatus.

##### b) Flammability test

*The specimen is subjected to the flammability test of G.1.2, annex G.*

#### 14.4.2 High voltage assemblies and other parts

##### Flammability test

*The specimen is subjected to the flammability test of G.1.2, annex G.*

#### 14.5 Protective devices

The application of protective devices shall be in accordance with their rated values.

External CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES of protective devices and their connections shall meet the requirements for BASIC INSULATION of clause 13 for the voltage across the device when opened.

*Compliance is checked by measurement or calculation.*

##### 14.5.1 THERMAL RELEASES

THERMAL RELEASES used in order to prevent the apparatus from becoming unsafe within the sense of this standard shall comply with 14.5.1.1, 14.5.1.2 or 14.5.1.3 respectively, whichever is applicable.

##### 14.5.1.1 THERMAL CUT-OUTS shall meet one of the following requirements:

- a) The THERMAL CUT-OUT when tested as a separate component, shall comply with the requirements and tests of IEC 60730 series as far as applicable.



For the purpose of this standard, the following applies:

- the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall be of type 2 action (see 6.4.2 of IEC 60730-1);
- the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall have at least MICRO-DISCONNECTION (type 2B) (see 6.4.3.2 and 6.9.2 of IEC 60730-1);
- the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall have a TRIP-FREE mechanism in which contacts cannot be prevented from opening against a continuation of a fault (type 2E) (see 6.4.3.5 of IEC 60730-1);
- the number of cycles of automatic action shall be at least
  - 3 000 cycles for THERMAL CUT-OUTS with automatic reset used in circuits which are not switched-off when the apparatus is switched-off (see 6.11.8 of IEC 60730-1),
  - 300 cycles for THERMAL CUT-OUTS with automatic reset used in circuits which are switched-off together with the apparatus and for THERMAL CUT-OUTS with no automatic reset which can be reset BY HAND from the outside of the apparatus (see 6.11.10 of IEC 60730-1),
  - 30 cycles for THERMAL CUT-OUTS with no automatic reset and which cannot be reset BY HAND from the outside of the apparatus (see 6.11.11 of IEC 60730-1);
- the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall be tested as designed for a long period of electrical stress across insulating parts (see 6.14.2 of IEC 60730-1);
- the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall meet the ageing requirements for an intended use of at least 10 000 h (see 6.16.3 of IEC 60730-1);
- with regard to the dielectric strength, the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall meet the requirements of 10.3 of this standard, except across the contact gap, and except between terminations and connecting leads of the contacts, for which 13.2 to 13.2.4 of IEC 60730-1 applies.

The characteristics of the THERMAL CUT-OUT with regard to:

- the ratings of the THERMAL CUT-OUT (see IEC 60730-1, clause 5);
- the classification of the THERMAL CUT-OUT according to
  - nature of supply (see 6.1 of IEC 60730-1),
  - type of load to be controlled (see 6.2 of IEC 60730-1),
  - degree of protection provided by enclosures against ingress of solid objects and dust (see 6.5.1 of IEC 60730-1),
  - degree of protection provided by enclosures against harmful ingress of water (see 6.5.2 of IEC 60730-1),
  - pollution situation for which the THERMAL CUT-OUT is suitable (see 6.5.3 of IEC 60730-1),
  - maximum ambient temperature limit (see 6.7 of IEC 60730-1);

shall be appropriate for the application in the apparatus under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions.

*Compliance is checked according to the test specifications of IEC 60730 series, by inspection and by measurement.*

- b) The THERMAL CUT-OUT, when tested as a part of the apparatus shall
- have at least MICRO-DISCONNECTION according to IEC 60730-1, withstanding a test voltage according to 13.2 of IEC 60730-1, and
  - have a TRIP-FREE mechanism in which contacts cannot be prevented from opening against a continuation of a fault, and
  - be aged for 300 h at a temperature corresponding to the ambient temperature of the THERMAL CUT-OUT when the apparatus is operated under normal operating conditions at an ambient temperature of 35 °C (45 °C for apparatus intended for use in tropical climates), and
  - be subjected to a number of cycles of automatic action as specified under a) for a THERMAL CUT-OUT tested as a separate component, by establishing the relevant fault conditions.

The test is made on three specimens.

No sustained arcing shall occur during the test.

After the test, the THERMAL CUT-OUT shall show no damage in the sense of this standard. In particular, it shall show no deterioration of its enclosure, no reduction of CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES and no loosening of electrical connections or mechanical fixings.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by the specified tests in the given order.*

#### 14.5.1.2 THERMAL LINKS shall meet one of the following requirements:

- a) The THERMAL LINK, when tested as a separate component, shall comply with the requirements and tests of IEC 60691.

The characteristics of the THERMAL LINK with regard to

- the ambient conditions (see 6.1 of IEC 60691),
- the circuit conditions (see 6.2 of IEC 60691),
- the ratings of the THERMAL LINK (see 8 b) of IEC 60691),
- the suitability for sealing in or use with impregnating fluids or cleaning solvents (see 8 c) of IEC 60691);

shall be appropriate for the application in the apparatus under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions.

The dielectric strength of the THERMAL LINK shall meet the requirements of 10.3 of this standard except across the disconnection (contact parts) and except between terminations and connecting leads of the contacts, for which 11.3 of IEC 60691 applies.

*Compliance is checked according to the test specifications of IEC 60691, by inspection and measurement.*

- b) The THERMAL LINK, when tested as a part of the apparatus shall be
- aged for 300 h at a temperature corresponding to the ambient temperature of the THERMAL LINK when the apparatus is operated under normal operating conditions at an ambient temperature of 35 °C (45 °C for apparatus intended for use in tropical climates), and
  - subjected to such fault conditions of the apparatus which cause the THERMAL LINK to operate. During the test, no sustained arcing and no damage in the sense of this standard shall occur, and
  - capable of withstanding two times the voltage across the disconnection and have an insulation resistance of at least 0,2 MΩ, when measured with a voltage equal to two times the voltage across the disconnection.

The test is made three times, no failure is allowed.

The THERMAL LINK is replaced, partially or completely, after each test.

NOTE When the THERMAL LINK cannot be replaced partially or completely, the complete component part comprising the THERMAL LINK, for example a transformer, should be replaced.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by the specified tests in the given order.*

**14.5.1.3** Thermal interrupting devices which are intended to be reset by soldering shall be tested according to 14.5.1.2 b).

However, the interrupting element is not replaced after operation, but reset according to the instructions of the apparatus manufacturer or, in absence of instructions, soldered with standard 60/40 tin/lead solder.

NOTE Examples of interrupting devices which are intended to be reset by soldering, are THERMAL RELEASES, integrated, on power resistors, for example externally.

## **14.5.2 Fuse-links and fuse holders**

**14.5.2.1** Fuse-links, DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, used in order to prevent the apparatus from becoming unsafe within the sense of this standard shall comply with the relevant part of IEC 60127, unless they have a rated current outside the range specified in that standard.

In the latter case, they shall comply with the relevant part of IEC 60127 as far as applicable.

For marking see 14.5.2.2.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**14.5.2.2** For fuse-links according to IEC 60127, the following marking shall be located on each fuse-holder or close to the fuse-link, in the given order:

- a symbol denoting the relative prearcing time/current characteristic;  
examples are:  
F, denoting quick acting;  
T, denoting time lag;
- the rated current in milliamperes for rated currents below 1 A, and in amperes for rated currents of 1 A or more;
- a symbol denoting the breaking capacity of the assigned fuse-link;  
examples are:  
L, denoting low breaking capacity;  
E, denoting enhanced breaking capacity;  
H, denoting high breaking capacity.  
Examples of marking:           T 315 L   or   T 315 mA L  
  F 1,25 H   or   F 1,25 A H
- the voltage rating of the fuse, where a fuse with a lower rated voltage could be fitted in error.

However, it is permissible to locate the marking elsewhere, in or on the apparatus, provided that it is obvious to which fuseholder the marking applies.

The marking requirements apply also if the fuse-links have a rated current outside the range specified in IEC 60127.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**14.5.2.3** Fuse holders, so designed that fuse-links can be connected in parallel in the same circuit, shall not be used.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**14.5.2.4** If HAZARDOUS LIVE parts are rendered ACCESSIBLE during replacement of fusing or interrupting devices, access to such parts shall not be possible BY HAND operation.

Fuse-holders for miniature cartridge fuse-links of the screw-in or bayonet type shall, if removal of the fuse-carrier BY HAND is possible from the outside of the apparatus, be so constructed that HAZARDOUS LIVE parts do not become ACCESSIBLE, either during insertion or removal of the fuse-link, or after the fuse-link has been removed. Fuse holders in compliance with IEC 60127-6 satisfy this requirement.

When the fuse carrier is constructed to hold the fuse-link, the fuse-link is placed in the fuse-carrier during the test.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

#### **14.5.3 PTC THERMISTORS**

PTC THERMISTORS used in order to prevent the apparatus from becoming unsafe within the sense of this standard shall comply with clauses 15, 17, J15 and J17 of IEC 60730-1.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by the tests of 11.2 of this standard.*

For PTC THERMISTORS whose power dissipation exceeds 15 W for the rated zero-power resistance at an ambient temperature of 25 °C, the encapsulation or tubing shall comply with the flammability category V-1 or better according to IEC 60707.

*Compliance is checked according to IEC 60707 or according to G.1.2 of annex G.*

#### **14.5.4 Protective devices not mentioned in 14.5.1, 14.5.2 or 14.5.3**

Such protective devices, for example fusing resistors, fuse-links not standardized in IEC 60127 or miniature circuit breakers, shall have adequate breaking capacity.

For non-resettable protective devices, such as fuse-links, a marking shall be located close to the protective device, so that correct replacement is possible.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and during the tests under fault conditions (see 11.2).*

*The test under fault condition is carried out three times.*

*No failure is allowed.*

## 14.6 Switches

### 14.6.1

**A1** Note deleted **A1**

**A1** MANUALLY OPERATED MECHANICAL SWITCHES which

- control currents exceeding 0,2 A r.m.s. a.c. or d.c., and/or
- have voltage across the open switch contacts exceeding 35 V (peak) a.c. or 24 V d.c.

shall meet one of the following requirements: **A1**

a) The switch tested as a separate component, shall comply with the requirements and tests of IEC 61058-1, whereby the following applies:

- the number of operating cycles shall be 10 000 (see 7.1.4.4 of IEC 61058-1);
- the switch shall be suitable for use in a normal pollution situation (see 7.1.6.2 of IEC 61058-1);
- as regards resistance to heat and fire, the switch shall conform to the requirements for level 3 (see 7.1.9.3 of IEC 61058-1);
- deviating from 13.1 of IEC 61058-1, for a.c. and d.c. MAINS SWITCHES the speed of contact making and breaking shall be independent of the speed of actuation. Moreover, MAINS SWITCHES shall comply with the flammability category V-0 or according to G.1.1 of annex G.

The characteristics of the switch with regard to:

- the ratings of the switch (see IEC 61058-1, clause 6);
- the classification of the switch according to:
  - nature of supply (see 7.1.1 of IEC 61058-1),
  - type of load to be controlled by the switch (see 7.1.2 of IEC 61058-1),
  - ambient air temperature (see 7.1.3 of IEC 61058-1);

shall be appropriate for the function of the switch under normal operating conditions.

*Compliance is checked according to test specifications of IEC 61058-1, by inspection and by measurements.*

*If the switch is a MAINS SWITCH which controls MAINS socket-outlets, the total rated current and the peak surge current of the socket-outlets as specified in 14.6.5 shall be taken into account for the measurement.*

b) The switch tested as part of the apparatus working under normal operating conditions, shall meet the requirements of 14.6.2, 14.6.5 and 20.1.4, and moreover:

- switches controlling currents exceeding 0,2 A r.m.s. a.c. or d.c. shall meet the requirements of 14.6.3 and 14.6.4 if the voltage across the open switch contacts exceeds 35 V (peak) a.c. or 24 V d.c. ;
- switches controlling currents exceeding 0,2 A r.m.s. a.c. or d.c. shall meet the requirements of 14.6.3 if the voltage across the open switch contacts does not exceed 35 V (peak) a.c. or 24 V d.c.;
- switches controlling currents up to 0,2 A r.m.s. a.c. or d.c. shall meet the requirements of 14.6.4. if the voltage across the open switch contacts exceeds 35 V (peak) a.c. or 24 V d.c.;
- MAINS SWITCHES shall comply with clause G.1.1 of annex G.

**14.6.2** A switch tested according to 14.6.1 b) shall withstand, without excessive wear or other harmful effects, the electrical, thermal and mechanical stresses that occur during intended use and shall have a mechanism complying with the requirements for d.c. switches in IEC 61058-1, subclause 13.1. Moreover, for MAINS SWITCHES the speed of contact making and breaking shall be independent of the speed of actuation.

*Compliance is checked according to IEC 61058-1, subclause 13.1, and by the following endurance test:*

*The switch is subjected to 10 000 cycles of operation with a sequence according to IEC 61058-1, subclause 17.1.2, excluding the increased-voltage test at accelerated speed specified in IEC 61058-1, subclause 17.2.4, and under electrical and thermal conditions given by the normal operating conditions of the apparatus.*

*The test is made on three specimens, no failure is allowed.*

**14.6.3** A switch tested according to 14.6.1 b) shall be so constructed that it does not attain excessive temperatures during intended use. The materials used shall be such that the performance of the switch is not adversely affected by the operation during intended use of the apparatus. In particular, the material and design of the contacts and terminations shall be such that their oxidation or other deterioration does not adversely affect the operation and performance of the switch.

*Compliance is checked in the on-position under normal operating conditions and according to IEC 61058-1, subclause 16.2.2 d), l) and m), taking into account the total rated current I of MAINS socket-outlets, if any, and the peak surge current according to 14.6.5.*

*The temperature rise at the terminations shall not exceed 55 K during this test.*

**14.6.4** A switch tested according to 14.6.1 b) shall have adequate dielectric strength.

*Compliance is checked by the following tests:*

*The switch shall withstand a dielectric strength test as specified in 10.3, without being previously subjected to the humidity treatment, the test voltage being decreased to 75 % of the corresponding test voltage specified in 10.3, but not less than 500 V r.m.s. (700 V peak).*

- *The test voltage is applied in the on-position between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or parts which are connected to ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, and in addition between the poles in case of a multipole switch.*
- *The test voltage is applied in the off-position across each contact gap. During the test, resistors, capacitors and RC-units in parallel to a contact gap may be disconnected.*

**14.6.5** *If the switch is a MAINS SWITCH which controls MAINS socket-outlets, the endurance test is carried out with an additional load connected to the socket-outlets, consisting of the circuit shown in IEC 61058-1, figure 9, taking into account IEC 61058-1, figure 10.*

*The total rated current of the additional load shall correspond to the marking of the socket-outlets, see 5.2 c). The peak surge current of the additional load shall have a value as shown in table 14.*

Table 14 – Peak surge current

Total rated current of the socket-outlets controlled by the switch A	Peak surge current A
Up to and including 0,5	20
Over 0,5 up to and including 1,0	50
Over 1,0 up to and including 2,5	100
Over 2,5	150

After the test, the switch shall show no damage in the sense of this standard. In particular, it shall show no deterioration of its enclosure, no reduction of CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES and no loosening of electrical connections or mechanical fixings.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by the tests specified in 14.6.3 and/or 14.6.4 in the given order.*

**14.7 SAFETY INTERLOCKS**

SAFETY INTERLOCKS shall be provided where access BY HAND is possible to areas presenting hazards in the sense of this standard.

For requirements and test specifications reference is made to 2.8 of IEC 60950.

**14.8 Voltage setting devices and the like**

The apparatus shall be so constructed that changing the setting from one voltage to another or from one nature of supply to another is unlikely to occur accidentally.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by manual test.*

NOTE Changing of the setting which necessitates consecutive movements BY HAND is deemed to comply with this requirement.

**14.9 Motors**

**14.9.1** Motors shall be so constructed as to prevent, in prolonged intended use, any electrical or mechanical failure impairing compliance with this standard. The insulation shall not be affected and contacts and connections shall be such that they do not work loose by heating, vibration, etc.

*Compliance is checked by the following tests carried out on the apparatus under normal operating conditions.*

- a) *The apparatus is connected to 1,1 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE and to 0,9 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE, each time for 48 h. Motors for short-time or intermittent operation are connected for periods in accordance with the operating time if limited by the construction of the apparatus.*

*In case of short-time operation, suitable cooling intervals are inserted.*

NOTE 1 It may be convenient to carry out this test immediately after the test of 7.1.

- b) *The motor is started 50 times while the apparatus is connected to 1,1 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE and 50 times while connected to 0,9 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE, each period of connection being at least 10 times the period from start to full speed, but not less than 10 s.*

*The intervals between starts shall be not less than three times the period of connection.*

*If the apparatus provides for more than one speed, the test is carried out at the most unfavourable speed.*

*After these tests, the motor shall withstand the dielectric strength of 10.3, no connection shall have loosened and there shall be no deterioration impairing the safety.*

NOTE 2 For induction motors with power supplied to the stator only, see also 14.3.2.

**14.9.2** Motors shall be so constructed or mounted that wiring, windings, commutators, slip-rings, insulations, etc., are not adversely affected by oil, grease or other substances to which they are exposed during intended use.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**14.9.3** Moving parts liable to cause personal injury shall be so arranged or enclosed as to provide adequate protection against this danger during intended use. Protective enclosures, guards and the like shall have adequate mechanical strength. They shall not be removable BY HAND.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by manual test.*

**14.9.4** In addition, for motors having phase-shifting capacitors, three-phase motors and series motors IEC 60950, annex B, clauses B.8, B.9 and B.10 applies.

#### **14.10 Batteries**

**14.10.1** Batteries shall be so mounted that there is no risk of the accumulation of flammable gases and that the leakage of electrolyte cannot impair any insulation.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**14.10.2** If it is possible for the USER to replace rechargeable batteries, which can be recharged in the apparatus, by non-rechargeable batteries, special means, such as a separate charging contact on a rechargeable special battery-pack or an electronic protective circuit, shall be provided to avoid any current being supplied into the non-rechargeable batteries.

This requirement does not apply to batteries inside the apparatus, the replacement of which by the USER is not intended, for example batteries for memories.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

NOTE Additional requirements regarding the instructions for use are given in 5.4.1.

**14.10.3** Under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions,

- for rechargeable batteries, the charging current,
- for lithium batteries, the discharging current and the reverse current,

shall not exceed the permissible values given by the battery manufacturer.

*Compliance is checked by measurement.*



*Lithium batteries shall be removed from the circuit and replaced by a voltage source when measuring discharging currents and by a short circuit when measuring reverse current.*

#### **14.10.4 Battery mould stress relief**

A SPECIAL BATTERY, in which containment of the electrolyte is dependent upon a thermoplastic material, shall not release electrolyte due to stresses caused by the moulding process if the electrolyte can contact insulation or enter a USER serviceable compartment.

*Compliance is checked by the following test.*

*The battery is to be placed in an air-circulating oven, maintained at a temperature of 70 °C, for a period of 7 h. Following the oven conditioning, the battery shall be examined for electrolyte that has been released.*

#### **14.10.5 Battery drop test**

A USER-serviceable SPECIAL BATTERY shall not release electrolyte as a result of being dropped.

*Compliance is checked by the following test.*

*Three samples are each to be subjected to a single drop through a distance of 1 m to strike a hardwood surface as described in 15.4.3. Following the drop test, each battery is to be examined for electrolyte that has been released.*

#### **14.11 Optocouplers**

Optocouplers shall comply with the constructional requirements of clause 8.

Internal and external CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES of optocouplers shall comply with 13.1. As an alternative, it is permitted to use 13.6 for testing jointed insulation.

#### **14.12 Surge suppression varistors**

Surge suppression varistors used in order to prevent MAINS overvoltages coming into the apparatus shall comply with IEC 61051-2.

Such components shall not be connected between parts connected to the MAINS and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or parts connected to them, except for earthed parts of PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS.

Reference is made to IEC 61051-2 where the following requirements apply:

- preferred climatic categories (2.1.1 of IEC 61051-2)
  - maximum lower temperature: –10 °C
  - minimum upper temperature: +85 °C
  - minimum duration of climatic tests: 21 days
- maximum continuous voltages (2.1.2 of IEC 61051-2)

The minimum value of the maximum continuous a.c. voltage shall be 1,2 times the RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE of the apparatus.

- current pulse rating (IEC 61051-2, subclause 2.1.2)

Surge suppression varistors shall withstand a combination pulse of 6 kV/3 kA with voltage waveform of 1,2/50  $\mu$ s and current waveform of 8/20  $\mu$ s.

*Compliance is checked by applying the test of IEC 61051-2, group 1. After the test, the varistor voltage (as defined in IEC 61051) shall not have changed by more than 10 % when measured with the manufacturer's specified current.*

- fire hazard (IEC 61051-2, table I, group 6)

The coating of surge suppression varistors shall have a flammability category V-0 or better according to IEC 60707.

*Compliance is checked according to IEC 60707 or according to clause G.1.1 of annex G.*

- thermal stress

For apparatus with nominal MAINS voltage of <150 V, the apparatus and a test resistor connected in series with the apparatus shall be energised from an a.c. source of 250 V.

The voltage source shall be applied for 4 h or until the circuit path through the varistor opens for each of the test series resistance values: 2 000  $\Omega$ , 500  $\Omega$ , 250  $\Omega$ , 50  $\Omega$ . A separate apparatus shall be used for each resistor value, unless damage from the previous test has been repaired.

At the end of each test, the apparatus shall comply with clause 11.

## 15 TERMINALS

### 15.1 Plugs and sockets

**15.1.1** Plugs and appliance couplers for the connection of the apparatus to the MAINS and socket-outlets and interconnection couplers for providing MAINS power to other apparatus shall comply with the relevant IEC standards for plugs and socket-outlets, appliance couplers or interconnection couplers.

Examples of the relevant IEC publications are: IEC 60083 [1], IEC 60320, IEC 60884 and IEC 60906.



MAINS socket-outlets and interconnection couplers mounted on CLASS II apparatus shall only permit connection of other CLASS II apparatus.

MAINS socket-outlets and interconnection couplers mounted on CLASS I apparatus shall either allow connection of CLASS II apparatus only or shall be provided with protective earthing contacts which are reliably connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact of the apparatus.

NOTE 3 For CLASS I apparatus, provision for both kinds of socket-outlets and interconnection couplers is allowed on the same apparatus.

NOTE 4 Socket-outlets allowing only the connection of CLASS II apparatus can be designed, for instance, similar to IEC 60906-1, standard sheets 3-1 or 3-2, or according to IEC 60320-2-2, standard sheets D or H.

For apparatus with socket-outlets providing MAINS power to other apparatus, measures shall be taken to ensure that plugs or appliance inlets for the connection of the apparatus to the MAINS cannot be overloaded, if the rated current of the plug or appliance connector is less than 16 A.

NOTE 5 Marking of the socket-outlets is not considered to be a suitable measure to prevent overloading.

**A1** Conductors of internal wiring of socket-outlets providing MAINS power to other apparatus either directly or via a MAINS SWITCH shall have a nominal cross-sectional area as specified in 16.2 for external flexible cords, except where the apparatus complies with Clause 11 when 4.3.9 is applied. **A1**

*Compliance is checked according to the relevant standards, by inspection and according to 16.2.*

**15.1.2** Connectors other than for connecting MAINS power, shall be so designed that the plug has such a shape that insertion into a MAINS socket-outlet or appliance coupler is unlikely to occur.

NOTE Examples of connectors meeting this requirement are those constructed according to IEC 60130-2, IEC 60130-9 [2], IEC 60169-2 or IEC 60169-3 [3], when used as prescribed. An example of a connector not meeting the requirements of this subclause is the so-called "banana" plug.

Sockets for audio and video circuits of LOAD TRANSDUCERS indicated with the symbol of 5.2 b) shall be so designed, that a plug for antenna and earth, for audio and video circuits of LOAD TRANSDUCERS and SOURCE TRANSDUCERS and for data and similar circuits which are not indicated with the symbol of 5.2 b), cannot be inserted into them.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**15.1.3** TERMINALS and connectors used in output circuits of SUPPLY APPARATUS, whose output voltage is not a standard nominal MAINS voltage according to IEC 60038, table I, shall not be compatible with those specified for household and similar general purposes, for example those described in IEC 60083 [1], IEC 60320, IEC 60884, IEC 60906.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by manual tests.*


The TERMINAL or connector shall be designed for the loading which may appear under normal operating conditions and during intended use.

*Compliance is checked according to IEC 60320 as far as safety is concerned, for instance with regard to shock hazard and heating.*

## 15.2 Provisions for protective earthing

ACCESSIBLE conductive parts of CLASS I apparatus, which might assume a hazardous voltage in the event of a single insulation fault in BASIC INSULATION, and the protective earthing contacts of socket-outlets shall be reliably connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL within the apparatus.

Protective earthing circuits shall not contain switches or fuses.

 Text deleted 

Protective earthing conductors may be bare or insulated. If insulated, the insulation shall be green/yellow except in the following two cases:

- a) for earthing braids, the insulation shall be either green/yellow or transparent;
- b) for internal protective conductors in assemblies such as ribbon cables, busbars, flexible printed wiring, etc., any colour may be used provided that no misinterpretation of the use of the conductor is likely to arise.

Wires identified by the colour combination green/yellow shall be used only for protective earthing connections.

For PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS and for apparatus provided with a non-detachable flexible cord or cable, a separate PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL shall be used, located adjacent to the MAINS TERMINALS, and shall comply with the requirements of 15.3 and, moreover, shall not serve to fix any other component.

If parts removable BY HAND have a protective earthing connection, this connection shall be made before the current-carrying connections are established when placing the part in position, and the current-carrying connections shall be separated before the protective earthing connection is interrupted when removing the part.

Conductive parts in contact with protective earthing connections shall not be subject to significant corrosion due to electrochemical action. Combinations above the line in annex F shall be avoided.

The PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL shall be resistant to significant corrosion.

NOTE 1 Corrosion resistance may be achieved by a suitable plating or coating process.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by reference to the table of electro-chemical potentials in annex F.*

The resistance of the connection between the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact, and parts required to be connected thereto, shall not exceed 0,1  $\Omega$ .

*Compliance is checked by the following test:*

*The test shall be carried out for 1 min with a test current of 25 A a.c. or d.c. The test voltage shall not exceed 12 V.*

*The voltage drop between the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL or contact and the part to be connected thereto shall be measured and the resistance is calculated from the current and this voltage drop. The resistance of the protective earthing conductor of the power supply cord shall not be included in the resistance measurement.*

NOTE 3 Care should be taken that the contact resistance between the tip of the measuring probe and the metal part under test does not influence the test result.

### **15.3 TERMINALS for external flexible cords and for permanent connection to the MAINS supply**

**15.3.1** PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS shall be provided with TERMINALS in which connection is made by means of screws, nuts or equally effective devices, for example screwless type clamping units according to IEC 60998-2-2 or TERMINALS according to IEC 60999.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

*For inlet openings, reference is made to IEC 60335-1.*

**15.3.2** For apparatus with non-detachable MAINS supply cords, the connection of the individual conductors to the internal wiring of the apparatus shall be accomplished by any means that will provide a reliable electrical and mechanical connection, except that the supply conductors and the protective earthing conductor of a non-detachable MAINS cord or cable shall not be soldered directly to the conductors of a PRINTED BOARD.

Soldered, crimped and similar connections may be used for the connection of external conductors. For soldered or crimped connections, barriers shall be provided so that CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES cannot be reduced to less than the values specified in clause 13 and annex J respectively, should the conductor break away at a soldered joint or slip out of a crimped connection. Alternatively, the conductors shall be positioned or fixed in such a way that reliance is not placed upon the connection alone to maintain the conductors in position.

*Compliance is checked by inspection, and, in case of doubt, by applying a pull of 5 N in any direction to the connection.*

**15.3.3** Screws and nuts which clamp external MAINS supply conductors shall have a thread conforming to ISO 261 or ISO 262, or a thread comparable in pitch and mechanical strength. They shall not serve to fix any other component, except that they may also clamp internal conductors if these are so arranged that they are unlikely to be displaced when fitting the MAINS supply conductors.

NOTE The terminations of a component (for example a switch) built into the apparatus may be used as TERMINALS for the supply of MAINS power to the apparatus, provided that they comply with the requirements of 15.3.1.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**15.3.4** For the purpose of applying the requirements for MAINS supply cords:

- it is assumed that two independent fixings will not become loose at the same time;
- conductors connected by soldering are not considered to be adequately fixed unless they are held in place near to the termination, independently of the solder. However "hooking-in" before the soldering is, in general, considered to be a suitable means for maintaining the conductors of a MAINS supply cord in position, provided that the hole through which the conductor is passed is not unduly large;

- conductors connected to TERMINALS or terminations by other means are not considered to be adequately fixed unless an additional fixing is provided near to the TERMINAL or termination; this additional fixing may clamp both the insulation and the conductor.

**15.3.5** TERMINALS for external flexible cords shall allow the connection of conductors having nominal cross-sectional areas as shown in table 15.

For rated currents exceeding 16 A, reference is made to IEC 60950, table 3D.

*Compliance is checked by inspection, by measurement and by fitting cords of the smallest and largest cross-sectional areas of the appropriate range shown in table 15.*

**Table 15 – Nominal cross-sectional area to be accepted by TERMINALS**

<b>RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION of the apparatus <sup>a</sup></b> A	<b>Nominal cross-sectional area</b> mm <sup>2</sup>
Up to and including 3	0,5 to 0,75
Over 3 up to and including 6	0,75 to 1
Over 6 up to and including 10	1 to 1,5
Over 10 up to and including 16	1,5 to 2,5
<sup>a</sup> The RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION includes currents which can be drawn from socket-outlets providing MAINS power for other apparatus.	

**15.3.6** TERMINALS according to 15.3.3 shall have minimum sizes as shown in table 16.

Stud TERMINALS shall be provided with washers.

For rated currents over 16 A, reference is made to IEC 60950, table 3E.

*Compliance is checked by measurement and inspection.*

**Table 16 – Minimum nominal thread diameter**

<b>RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION of the apparatus <sup>a</sup></b> A	<b>Minimum nominal thread diameter</b> mm	
	<b>Pillar type or stud type</b>	<b>Screw type</b>
Up to and including 10	3	3,5
Over 10 up to and including 16	3,5	4
<sup>a</sup> The RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION includes currents which can be drawn from socket-outlets providing MAINS power for other apparatus.		

**15.3.7** TERMINALS shall be so designed that they clamp the conductor between metal surfaces with sufficient contact pressure and without damage to the conductor.

TERMINALS shall be so designed or located that the conductor cannot slip out when the clamping screws or nuts are tightened.

TERMINALS shall be so fixed that, when the means of clamping the conductor is tightened or loosened,

- the TERMINAL itself does not work loose;
- internal wiring is not subjected to stress;
- CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES are not reduced below the values specified in clause 13 and annex J.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

**15.3.8** TERMINALS in circuits carrying a current exceeding 0,2 A under normal operating conditions shall be so designed that contact pressure is not transmitted through insulating material other than ceramic, unless there is sufficient resiliency in the metallic parts to compensate for any possible shrinkage of the insulating material.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**15.3.9** For non-detachable MAINS supply cords, each TERMINAL shall be located in proximity to its corresponding TERMINALS of different potential and to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL, if any.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

TERMINALS shall be so located, guarded or insulated that, should a strand of a flexible conductor escape when the conductor is fitted, there is no risk of accidental contact between such a strand and:

- ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or conductive parts connected to them;
- conductive parts not connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL and separated from ACCESSIBLE conductive parts by SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION only.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and, unless a special cord is prepared in such a way as to prevent the escape of strands, by the following test.*

*An 8 mm length of insulation shall be removed from the end of a flexible conductor having the appropriate nominal cross-sectional area. One wire of the stranded conductor shall be left free and the other wires shall be fully inserted into, and clamped in the TERMINAL.*

*Without tearing the insulation back, the free wire shall be bent in every possible direction, but without making sharp bends round a guard.*

*If the conductor is HAZARDOUS LIVE, the free wire shall not touch any conductive part which is ACCESSIBLE or is connected to an ACCESSIBLE conductive part or, in the case of apparatus with DOUBLE INSULATION, any conductive part which is separated from ACCESSIBLE conductive parts by SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION only.*

*If the conductor is connected to an earthing TERMINAL, the free wire shall not touch any HAZARDOUS LIVE part.*

#### **15.4 Devices forming a part of the MAINS plug**

**15.4.1** A device provided with pins intended to be introduced into fixed socket-outlets shall not impose undue strain on these socket-outlets.

*Compliance is checked by engaging the device, as during intended use, with the socket-outlet of a test apparatus as shown in figure 11. The balancing arm of the test apparatus pivots about a horizontal axis through the centre lines of the contact tubes of the socket-outlet at a distance of 8 mm behind the engagement face of the socket-outlet.*

*With the device not in engagement, the balancing arm is in equilibrium, the engagement face of the socket-outlet being in the vertical position.*

*After the device has been engaged, the torque to be applied to the socket-outlet to maintain its engagement face in the vertical plane is determined by the position of a weight on the balancing arm. The torque shall not exceed 0,25 Nm.*

NOTE 1 This test is compatible with the test described in the IEC 60884-1.

NOTE 2 The testing device shown in figure 11 is intended for the testing of devices forming a part of the MAINS plug. Examples of MAINS plugs are given in IEC 60083 [1]. For devices forming a part of the MAINS plug with other dimensions, other testing devices and requirements may be necessary.

**15.4.2** The MAINS plug part of the device shall comply with the standards for the dimensions of MAINS plugs. The overall shape of the device shall be such, that it can not be mistaken as a standard MAINS plug.

*Compliance is checked by measurement in accordance with the relevant standard.*

NOTE The dimensions of some types of MAINS plugs are given in IEC 60083 [1].

For any particular plug, care should be taken to check the current edition of any relevant national standard.

**15.4.3** The device shall have adequate mechanical strength.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by the following tests:*

a) *The device shall be subjected to a drop test.*

*A sample of the complete device shall be subjected to three impacts that result from being dropped 1 m on to a horizontal surface in positions likely to produce the most adverse results.*

*The horizontal surface shall consist of hardwood of at least 13 mm thick, mounted on two layers of plywood each 19 mm to 20 mm thick, all supported on a concrete or equivalent non-resilient floor.*

*After the test, the specimen shall comply with the requirements of this standard, but it need not be operational.*

NOTE 1 Small pieces may be broken off, provided that the protection against electric shock is not affected.

NOTE 2 Distortion of pins and damage to the finish and small dents which do not reduce the CLEARANCES or CREEPAGE DISTANCES below the values specified in clause 13, are neglected.

b) *The pins shall not turn when a torque of 0,4 Nm is applied, first in one direction for 1 min and then in the opposite direction for 1 min.*

NOTE 3 This test is not carried out if rotation of the pins does not impair safety in the sense of this standard.

c) *A pull force as given in table 17 is applied, without jerks, for 1 min on each pin in turn, in the direction of the longitudinal axis of the pin.*

*The pull force is applied within a heating cabinet at a temperature of  $(70 \pm 2)$  °C, 1 h after the device has been placed in the heating cabinet.*

*After the test, the device is allowed to cool down to ambient temperature, no pin shall have been displaced in the body of the device by more than 1 mm.*



Table 17 – Pull force on pins

Ratings of the equivalent plug type	Number of poles	Pull force N
Up to and including 10 A 130/250 V	2	40
	3	50
Over 10 A up to and including 16 A 130/250 V	2	50
	3	54
Over 10 A up to and including 16 A 440 V	3	54
	More than 3	70

For the purpose of this test, protective earthing contacts, irrespective of their number, are considered as one pole.

Tests b) and c) are made separately, each with new samples.

16 External flexible cords

16.1 MAINS supply flexible cords shall be of the sheathed type complying with IEC 60227 for PVC cords or according to IEC 60245 for synthetic rubber cords.



Compliance is checked by testing MAINS supply flexible cords in accordance with IEC 60227 or IEC 60245.

Non-detachable flexible cables and cords of CLASS I apparatus shall be provided with a green/yellow core connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL of the apparatus and, if a plug is provided, to the protective earthing contact of the plug.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

NOTE 2 The colour code for cores of flexible MAINS cords is contained in IEC 60173 [4].

16.2 Power supply cord conductors shall have a nominal cross-sectional area not less than those shown in table 18.

Table 18 – Nominal cross-sectional areas of external flexible cords

RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION of the apparatus <sup>a</sup> A	Nominal cross-sectional area mm <sup>2</sup>
Up to and including 3	0,5 <sup>b</sup>
Over 3 up to and including 6	0,75
Over 6 up to and including 10	1
Over 10 up to and including 16	1,5
<sup>a</sup> The RATED CURRENT CONSUMPTION includes currents which can be drawn from the socket-outlets providing MAINS power for other apparatus.	
<sup>b</sup> This nominal cross-sectional area is allowed only for CLASS II apparatus and provided that the length of the supply cord, measured between the point where the cord or the cord guard enters the apparatus, and the entry to the plug, does not exceed 2 m.	

For higher currents, reference is made to IEC 60950, table 3B.

Compliance is checked by measurement.



**16.3**

- a) Flexible cords, not complying with 16.1, used as a connection between the apparatus and other apparatus used in combination with it, and comprising HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors, shall have adequate dielectric strength.

*Compliance is checked by applying the dielectric strength test using a sample of approximately 1 m length and by applying the relevant test voltage according to 10.3 for the grade of insulation under consideration, as follows:*

- *for insulation of a conductor: by the voltage test method given in IEC 60885-1, subclauses 3.1 and 3.2;*
- *for SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, for example sleeving around a group of conductors: between a conductor inserted into the sleeve and metal foil wrapped tightly round the sleeve for a length of at least 100 mm.*

NOTE Where a power supply cord, whose insulating properties comply with those of the cord types of 16.1, is used inside the apparatus, either as an extension of the external power supply cord or as an independent cable, its sheath is considered to be adequate SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION for the purposes of this subclause.

- b) Flexible cords not complying with 16.1, used as connection between the apparatus and other apparatus used in combination with it, and comprising HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors, shall withstand bending and other mechanical stresses occurring during intended use.

*Compliance is checked by the test of 3.1 of IEC 60227-2, except that the table 19 applies.*

**Table 19 – Mass and pulley diameter for stress test**

Overall diameter of the flexible cable or cord mm	Mass kg	Pulley diameter mm
Up to and including 6	1,0	60
Over 6 up to and including 12	1,5	120
Over 12 up to and including 20	2,0	180

*The carrier moves to and fro 15 000 times (30 000 movements).*

*The voltage U between the conductors is the test voltage according to 10.3.*

*During and after the test, the specimen shall withstand the dielectric strength test specified in 10.3.*

- 16.4** Conductors of flexible cords used as a connection between the apparatus and other apparatus used in combination with it shall have a cross-sectional area such that the temperature rise of the insulation under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions is negligible.

*Compliance is checked by inspection. In case of doubt, the temperature rises of the insulation are determined under normal operating conditions and under fault conditions. The temperature rises shall not exceed the values given in the appropriate columns of table 3.*

- 16.5** The apparatus shall allow the external flexible cords, comprising one or more HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors, to be so connected that the connecting points of the conductors are relieved from strain, that the outer covering is protected from abrasion, and that the conductors are prevented from twisting.

Moreover, it shall not be possible to push an external cord back into the apparatus through its aperture if this can impair safety in the sense of this standard.

The method by which the relief from strain and the prevention of twisting is provided shall be clearly seen.

Makeshift methods, such as tying the cord into a knot or tying the cord with a string, are not permitted.

The devices for strain and twist relief shall either be made of insulating material, or have a fixed covering of insulating material other than natural rubber, if an insulation fault of the cord may make ACCESSIBLE conductive parts HAZARDOUS LIVE.

For CLASS I apparatus, the arrangement of the TERMINALS for the MAINS supply flexible cord, or the length of the conductors between the device for strain and twist relief and the TERMINALS, shall be such that the HAZARDOUS LIVE conductors become taut before the conductor connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL, in case the cord slips out of the device for strain and twist relief.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by the following test.*

*The test is made with the type of flexible cord attached to the apparatus.*

*The apparatus is fitted with its flexible cord, the device for strain and twist relief being appropriately used. The conductors are introduced into the TERMINALS, and the TERMINAL screws, if any, are slightly tightened, so that the conductors cannot easily change their position.*

*After this preparation, pushing the cord further into the apparatus shall not be possible or shall cause no hazard in the sense of this standard.*

*A mark is made on the cord, under strain, near the aperture, and the flexible cord is subjected 100 times to a pull of 40 N for a duration of 1 s each. The pull shall not be applied in jerks.*

*Immediately afterwards, the cord is subjected for a period of 1 min to a torque of 0,25 Nm.*

*During the test, the cord shall not be displaced by more than 2 mm, the measurement being made while the cord is still under strain. The ends of the conductors shall not be noticeably displaced in the TERMINALS and no damage to the flexible cord shall be caused by the device for strain and twist relief.*

**16.6** Apertures for external flexible cords mentioned in 16.5 shall be so constructed that there is no risk of damage to the cord during its introduction or subsequent movement.

NOTE This can be done, for example, by rounding the edges of the aperture or by using an appropriate bushing of insulating material.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by fitting flexible cords.*

**16.7** TRANSPORTABLE APPARATUS shall have an appliance inlet according to IEC 60320-1 for connection to the MAINS by detachable cord sets or shall have a means of stowage to protect the MAINS cord when not in use, for example a compartment, hooks or pegs.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

## **17 Electrical connections and mechanical fixings**

**17.1** Screw TERMINALS providing electrical contact and screw fixings which during the life of the apparatus will be loosened and tightened several times shall have adequate strength.

Screws exerting contact pressure and screws with a nominal diameter less than 3 mm which form part of the above-mentioned screw fixings shall screw into a metal nut or a metal insert.

However, screws having a nominal diameter less than 3 mm, which do not exert contact pressure, need not be screwed into metal, provided that the screw fixing withstands the torque specified in table 20 for screws of 3 mm diameter.

Screw fixings which during the life of the apparatus will be loosened and tightened several times include TERMINAL screws, screws for fixing covers (as far as they must be loosened to open the apparatus), screws for fixing handles, knobs, legs, stands and the like.

*Compliance is checked by the following test.*

*The screws are loosened and then tightened, with a torque according to table 20:*

- 5 times in the case of screws operating in a thread of metal;*
- 10 times in the case of screws operating in wood, WOOD-BASED MATERIAL or in a thread in insulating material.*

*In the latter case, the screws are to be completely removed and reinserted each time.*

*The screws shall not be tightened in jerks.*

*After the test, there shall be no deterioration impairing safety in the sense of this standard.*

*The material in which the screws are inserted is verified by inspection.*

Table 20 – Torque to be applied to screws

Nominal diameter of screw mm	Torque Nm		
	I	II	III
Up to and including 2,8	0,2	0,4	0,4
Over 2,8 up to and including 3,0	0,25	0,5	0,5
Over 3,0 up to and including 3,2	0,3	0,6	0,6
Over 3,2 up to and including 3,6	0,4	0,8	0,6
Over 3,6 up to and including 4,1	0,7	1,2	0,6
Over 4,1 up to and including 4,7	0,8	1,8	0,9
Over 4,7 up to and including 5,3	0,8	2,0	1,0
Over 5,3 up to and including 6,0	–	2,5	1,25

The test is made by means of a suitable test screwdriver, spanner or key, applying a torque as shown in table 20, the appropriate column being

- for metal screws without heads, if the screw, when tightened, does not protrude from the hole: I
- for other metal screws and for nuts: II
- for screws of insulating material:
  - having a hexagonal head with the dimension across flats exceeding the overall thread diameter, or
  - with a cylindrical head and a socket for a key, the socket having a dimension across flats not less than 0,83 times the overall thread diameter, or
  - with a head having a slot or cross slots, the length of which exceeds 1,5 times the overall thread diameter: II
- for other screws of insulating material: III

**17.2** Means shall be provided to ensure the correct introduction of screws into female threads in non-metallic material, if they will be loosened and tightened several times during the life of the apparatus and contribute to safety in the sense of this standard.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by manual test.*

NOTE This requirement is deemed to be met if introduction in a slanting manner is prevented, for example by guiding the screw in the part to be fixed by a recess in the nut or a lead to the screw.

**17.3** Screws or other fixing devices intended to fix covers, legs, stands or the like, shall be captive in order to prevent replacement during servicing by screws or other fixing devices, which might cause a reduction of CLEARANCES or CREEPAGE DISTANCES between ACCESSIBLE conductive parts or parts connected to them and HAZARDOUS LIVE parts below the values given in clause 13.

Such screws need not be captive if, when replaced by screws having the same nominal diameter, pitch and sharpness with a length of 10 times their nominal diameter, using the torque of table 20, the distances are not less than those stated in clause 13.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

**17.4** Conductive parts permanently fixed together and carrying a current exceeding 0,2 A across their interface under normal operating conditions shall be secured in such a way that loosening is prevented.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by manual test.*

NOTE 1 Sealing by compound or the like provides satisfactory locking only for screw connections not subject to torsion.

NOTE 2 If the fixing consists of more than one screw or rivet, only one of them need be locked.

NOTE 3 For rivets, a non-circular shank or an appropriate notch may be a sufficient guard against rotation.

**17.5** Electrical connections in circuits carrying a current exceeding 0,2 A under normal operation conditions shall be so designed that contact pressure is not transmitted through insulating material other than ceramic, unless there is sufficient resiliency in the metallic parts to compensate for any possible shrinkage of the insulating material.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**17.6** Stranded conductors of flexible supply cords carrying a current exceeding 0,2 A under normal operating conditions, which are connected to screw TERMINALS, shall not be consolidated by lead-tin soldering where they are subject to contact pressure, unless the clamping means is so designed that there is no risk of a bad contact due to cold flow of the solder.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**17.7** Cover-fixing devices, which may be operated during the life of the apparatus, shall have adequate mechanical strength, if the failure of such devices would impair safety in the sense of this standard.

The locked and unlocked positions of these devices shall not be ambiguous, and it shall not be possible to unlock the devices inadvertently.

*Compliance is checked by inspection, by operating the device and by one of the following tests:*

- *In the case of devices the operation of which is effected by a combination of rotary and linear movements, the device is locked and unlocked and the torques or forces necessary for this operation are measured. While the device is in the locked position, a torque or force of twice the value necessary to lock the device, with a minimum of 1 Nm or 10 N is applied in the locking direction, unless it is unlocked by a smaller torque or force in the same direction.*

*This operation is performed 10 times.*

*The torque or force necessary to unlock the device shall be at least 0,1 Nm or 1 N.*

- *In the case of covers fixed by means of snap fasteners, the cover is removed and replaced 10 times in the intended way.*

*After this test the cover shall still comply with the tests by means of the rigid test finger and the test hook described in 9.1.7 a) and b).*

**17.8** Detachable legs or stands supplied by the manufacturer of the apparatus shall be delivered with the relevant fixing means.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

**17.9** Internal pluggable connections shall be so designed that unintended loosening is unlikely, if the loosening can impair the safety in the sense of this standard.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and in case of doubt by applying a pull of 2 N in any direction to the connection.*

NOTE For other internal connections, see 8.11.

## **18 Mechanical strength of picture tubes and protection against the effects of implosion**

**A1** Picture tubes shall comply with the requirements of 18.1. As an alternative, for intrinsically protected tubes, manufacturers may choose the picture tubes to comply with IEC 61965.

NOTE The present test of 18.2 will be replaced by a full reference to IEC 61965 in the forthcoming Amendment 2 to IEC 60065. **A1**

### **18.1 General**

Picture tubes with a maximum face dimension exceeding 16 cm either shall be intrinsically protected with respect to effects of implosion and to mechanical impact, or the enclosure of the apparatus shall provide adequate protection against the effects of an implosion of the tube.

**A1** A protective film, attached to the faceplate of the picture tube as part of the implosion protection system, shall be covered on all edges by the enclosure of the apparatus. **A1**

A non-intrinsically protected picture tube shall be provided with an effective protective screen, which cannot be removed BY HAND. If a separate screen of glass is used, it shall not be in contact with the surface of the tube.

*Compliance is checked by inspection, by measurement, and by the tests of:*

- 18.2 for intrinsically protected tubes, including those having integral protective screens;
- 18.3 for apparatus having non-intrinsically protected tubes.

NOTE 1 A picture tube is considered to be intrinsically protected with respect to the effects of implosion if, when it is correctly mounted, no additional protection is necessary.

NOTE 2 To facilitate the tests, the tube manufacturer may indicate the most vulnerable area on the tubes to be tested.

### **18.2 Intrinsically protected picture tubes, including those having integral protective screens**

*Each of the tests of 18.2.2 and 18.2.3 is made on six tubes, three of which are tested as received and the others after having been subjected to the ageing process of 18.2.1.*

*No failure is allowed.*

*For the tests of 18.2.2 and 18.2.3, the tubes are mounted in a test cabinet, according to the instructions given by the manufacturer of the tube, the cabinet being placed on a horizontal support at a height of  $(75 \pm 5)$  cm above the floor.*

*Care is taken that, during the tests, the cabinet does not slide on the support.*

NOTE The following description of a test cabinet is given as an example:

- the cabinet is made of plywood, with a thickness of about 12 mm for tubes having a maximum face dimension not exceeding 50 cm and of about 19 mm for larger tubes;
- the outside dimensions of the cabinet are approximately 25 % larger than the overall dimensions of the tube;

- the front of the cabinet is provided with an opening closely surrounding the tube when mounted. The back of the cabinet is provided with an opening, 5 cm in diameter, and rests against a wooden bar, about 25 mm high, which is fixed to the support and prevents the cabinet from sliding.

### 18.2.1 Ageing process

*The ageing process is as follows:*

*a) Damp heat conditioning:*

*24 h at  $(25 \pm 2)$  °C and 90 % to 95 % relative humidity*

*24 h at  $(45 \pm 2)$  °C and 75 % to 80 % relative humidity*

*24 h at  $(25 \pm 2)$  °C and 90 % to 95 % relative humidity*

*b) Change of temperature consisting of two cycles, each comprising:*

*1 h at  $(+20 \pm 2)$  °C*

*1 h at  $(-25 \pm 2)$  °C*

*1 h at  $(+20 \pm 2)$  °C*

*1 h at  $(+50 \pm 2)$  °C*

NOTE The change of temperature is not intended to cause severe thermal stress on the picture tube, and may be achieved using one or two chambers.

*c) Damp heat conditioning as indicated under a).*

### 18.2.2 Implosion test

*Cracks are propagated in the envelope of each tube by the following method:*

*An area on the side or on the face of each tube is scratched (see figure 12) with a diamond stylus and this place is repeatedly cooled with liquid nitrogen or the like until a fracture occurs. To prevent the cooling liquid from flowing away from the test area, a dam of modelling clay or the like should be used.*

*After this test, no particles having a mass exceeding 2 g shall have passed a 25 cm high barrier placed on the floor 50 cm from the projection of the front of the tube and no particles shall have passed a similar barrier at 200 cm.*

### 18.2.3 Mechanical strength test

*Each tube is subjected to one impact of a hardened steel ball having a Rockwell hardness of at least R62 and a diameter of  $40^{+1}_0$  mm, and which is suspended from a fixed point by means of a string.*

*Keeping the string straight, the ball is raised and then allowed to fall onto any place on the face of the tube from a height such that the vertical distance between the ball and the point of impact is:*

- 210 cm for tubes having a maximum face dimension exceeding 40 cm;
- 170 cm for other tubes.

*The point of impact on the face of the tube shall be at least 20 mm from the border of its useful area.*

*After this test, no particles having a mass exceeding 10 g shall have passed a 25 cm high barrier, placed on the floor, 150 cm from the projection of the front of the tube.*



### 18.3 Non-intrinsically protected picture tubes

*The apparatus, with the picture tube and the protective screen in position, is placed on a horizontal support at a height of  $(75 \pm 5)$  cm above the floor, or directly on the floor if the apparatus is obviously intended to be positioned on the floor.*

*The tube is made to implode inside the enclosure of the apparatus by the method described in 18.2.2.*

*After this test, no particles having a mass exceeding 2 g shall have passed a 25 cm high barrier, placed on the floor, 50 cm from the projection of the front of the apparatus, and no particle shall have passed a similar barrier at 200 cm.*

## 19 Stability and mechanical hazards

**A1** Apparatus having a mass of 7 kg or more shall have adequate stability. In addition, the stability shall be ensured when legs, carts or stands supplied or recommended by the manufacturer are fitted.

*Compliance is checked by the tests of 19.1, 19.2 and 19.3.*

Apparatus intended to be fastened in place is not required to be subjected to these tests, and the test of 19.3 applies only to

- apparatus with a mass of 25 kg or more, or
- apparatus, excluding loudspeaker systems, with a height of 1 m or more, or
- apparatus, excluding loudspeaker systems, in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand with a total height of 1 m or more. **A1**

*During the tests, the apparatus shall not overturn.*

**19.1** *The apparatus, or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand, is placed in its intended position of use on a plane, inclined at an angle of  $10^\circ$  to the horizontal, and then rotated slowly through an angle of  $360^\circ$  about its normal vertical axis.*

*All doors, drawers, casters, adjustable feet and other appurtenances are arranged in any combination that results in the least stability. The apparatus, or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand, shall be blocked, if necessary, by means of a stop of the smallest dimensions possible, to keep it from sliding or rolling.*

*If, however, the apparatus, or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand, is such that, were it to be tilted through an angle of  $10^\circ$  when standing on a horizontal plane, a part of it not normally in contact with the supporting surface would touch the horizontal plane, the apparatus is placed on a horizontal support and the combination is tilted in the most unfavourable direction through an angle of  $10^\circ$ .*

NOTE The test on the horizontal support may be necessary, for example, for apparatus provided with small feet, casters or the like.

**19.2** The apparatus or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand, is placed on a non-skid surface that is at an angle not exceeding  $1^\circ$  to the horizontal with lids, flaps, drawers, doors, casters, wheels, adjustable feet and other appurtenances in the most unfavourable position.

A force of 100 N directed vertically downwards is applied in such a way as to produce the maximum overturning moment, to any point of any horizontal surface, protrusion or recess, provided that the distance from that point to the non-skid surface does not exceed 75 cm.

**A1** **19.3** The apparatus or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand is placed on a horizontal non-skid surface. All doors, drawers, casters, adjustable feet and other moveable parts are arranged in any combination that results in the least stability.

The apparatus or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand shall be blocked, if necessary, by means of a stop of the smallest dimensions possible, to keep it from sliding or rolling.

An externally applied horizontal force of 13 % of the weight of the apparatus or 100 N, whichever is less, is applied in a horizontal direction to that point on the apparatus that will result in the least stability. The force shall not be applied more than 1,5 m above floor level.

If the apparatus or apparatus in combination with a supplied or recommended cart or stand becomes unstable, it shall not overturn at a tilt of less than  $15^\circ$  from the vertical. **A1**

**19.4** Edges or corners, except those required for proper apparatus functioning, shall be smoothed (no abrupt discontinuity) when they could otherwise be hazardous to the USER because of location or application in the apparatus.

Compliance is checked by inspection.

**19.5** Glass, with the exception of picture tubes and laminated glass, with a surface area exceeding  $0,1 \text{ m}^2$  or with a major dimension exceeding 450 mm, shall not be shattered in a manner likely to result in a skin-lacerating injury.

**A1** Compliance is checked by the test of 12.1.3 using the impact hammer only. **A1**

If thereby the glass breaks or cracks, an additional test according to 19.5.1 is made on a separate test sample.

#### **19.5.1 Fragmentation test**

The test sample is supported over its whole area and precautions shall be taken to ensure that particles will not be scattered upon fragmentation. Then the test sample is shattered with a centre punch placed approximately 15 mm in from the midpoint of one of the longer edges of the test sample. Within 5 min of fracture, and without using any aid to vision, except spectacles if normally worn, the particles are counted in a square of 50 mm side located approximately at the centre of the area of coarsest fracture and excluding any area within 15 mm of any edge or hole.

The test sample shall fragment in such a way that the number of particles counted in a square of 50 mm side shall not be less than 45.

NOTE A suitable method of counting the particles is to place a square of 50 mm side of transparent material over the test sample and mark a spot of ink as each particle within the square is counted. To count particles at the edges of the square, select any two adjacent sides of the square and count all the particles intersected by these, and exclude all other intersected particles.

### 19.6 Wall or ceiling mounting means

The mounting means of apparatus intended for wall or ceiling mounting shall be adequate.

*Compliance is checked by inspection of the construction and of available data, or where necessary, by the following test.*

*The apparatus is mounted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, a force in addition to the weight of the apparatus is applied downwards through the centre of gravity, for 1 min. The additional force shall be equal to three times the weight of the apparatus but not less than 50 N. The apparatus and its associated mounting means shall remain secure during the test.*



## 20 Resistance to fire

The apparatus shall be so designed that the start and spread of fire is prevented as far as possible, and shall not give rise to danger of fire to the surroundings of the apparatus.


This is achieved as follows:

- by using good engineering practice in design and production of the apparatus to avoid POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES,
- and
- by using materials of low flammability for internal parts in the vicinity of POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES,
- and
- by using FIRE ENCLOSURES to limit the spread of fire.

The requirements are considered to be fulfilled, if the apparatus complies with the requirements of 20.1 and 20.2.

NOTE 1 It is recommended that the quantity of environmentally unfriendly flame retardant materials should be kept as low as possible in order to minimise environmental pollution.  


### 20.1 Electrical components and mechanical parts

 Electrical components and mechanical parts, with the exception of those in a) and b), shall comply with the requirements of 20.1.1, 20.1.2, 20.1.3 and 20.1.4.

- a) Components that are contained in an enclosure having a flammability category of V-0 according to IEC 60695-11-10 and having openings only for the connecting wires filling the openings completely, and for ventilation not exceeding 1 mm in width regardless of length.
- b) The following parts, which would contribute negligible fuel to a fire:
  - small mechanical parts, such as mounting parts, gears, cams, belts and bearings, if the mass of the non-metallic material of each part does not exceed 4 g, excluding metal, glass and ceramic;
  - small electrical components, such as:
    - integrated circuits, transistors, optocoupler packages;
    - capacitors with a volume not exceeding 1 750 mm<sup>3</sup>,
 provided these components are mounted on material of flammability category V-1 or better according to IEC 60695-11-10.

NOTE 1 Connectors are regarded as electrical components.

NOTE 2 In considering how to minimise propagation of fire and what "small parts" are, account should be taken of the cumulative effect of small parts adjacent to each other for the possible effect of propagating fire from one part to another.

NOTE 3 In the forthcoming Amendment 2 of IEC 60065, other occurrences of IEC 60707 will be replaced. 

### 20.1.1 Electrical components

Electrical components shall comply with the relevant flammability requirement of clause 14.

Where there are no applicable flammability requirements in clause 14, the requirements of 20.1.4 apply.

*Compliance is checked by appropriate tests of clause 14 or 20.1.4*

### 20.1.2 Internal wiring

Insulation on wiring shall not contribute to the spread of fire under following conditions:

- a) wiring working at voltages exceeding 4 kV (peak) a.c. or d.c., or
- b) wiring leaving an internal FIRE ENCLOSURE with the exception of insulation consisting of PVC, TFE, PTFE, FEP or neoprene,
- c) wiring within the areas mentioned in table 21, unless they are shielded by a barrier according to table 21, with the exception of insulation consisting of PVC, TFE, PTFE, FEP or neoprene.

NOTE Reference is made to ISO 1043-1 [19] for the meaning of the abbreviations.

*Compliance is checked by the tests of clause G.2, annex G.*

### 20.1.3 Printed boards

Base material of PRINTED BOARDS, on which the AVAILABLE POWER at a connection exceeds 15 W operating at a voltage exceeding 50 V up to and including 400 V (peak) a.c. or d.c. under normal operating conditions, shall be of flammability category V-1 or better according to IEC 60707, unless the PRINTED BOARDS are protected by an enclosure meeting the flammability category V-0 according to IEC 60707, or be made of metal, having openings only for connecting wires which fill the openings completely.

Base material of PRINTED BOARDS, on which the AVAILABLE POWER at a connection exceeds 15 W operating at a voltage exceeding 400 V (peak) a.c. or d.c. under normal operating conditions, and base material of PRINTED BOARDS supporting spark gaps which provide protection against overvoltages, shall be of flammability category V-0 according to IEC 60707, unless the PRINTED BOARDS are contained in a metal enclosure, having openings only for connecting wires which fill the openings completely.

*Compliance is checked for the smallest thickness of PRINTED BOARD used, in accordance with IEC 60707 or with clause G.1 of annex G, after a preconditioning of 24 h at a temperature of  $(125 \pm 2)^\circ\text{C}$  in an air-circulating oven and a subsequent cooling period of 4 h at room temperature in a desiccator over anhydrous calcium chloride.*

#### 20.1.4 Components and parts not covered by 20.1.1, 20.1.2 and 20.1.3

This clause does not apply to FIRE ENCLOSURES.

When the distance between POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES and components or parts mentioned in the heading does not exceed the values specified in table 21, then these components and parts shall comply with the relevant flammability category according to IEC 60707 as specified in table 21, unless shielded from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES by a barrier made of metal or meeting the flammability category as specified in table 21. The barrier shall be solid and rigid and shall have dimensions covering at least the areas specified in table 21 and shown in figure 13. The dimensions of a non-metallic barrier shall be sufficient to prevent ignition of its edges and of the edges of openings in the barrier.

NOTE Requirements for barriers consisting of composite material or a combination of layers are under consideration.

*Compliance is checked by inspection, measurement and by the test of clause G.3, annex G.*

PRINTED BOARDS carrying POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES are not considered to be a barrier for the purpose of this subclause.

POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES inside electrical components are not included in this subclause.

**Table 21 – Distances from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES and consequential flammability categories**

Open-circuit voltage of the POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE	For apparatus containing voltages not exceeding 4 kV				For apparatus containing voltages exceeding 4 kV			
	Minimum distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES to the components or parts  (see figure 13)		Flammability category of components and parts according to IEC 60707, if the distance is less than the minimum distance required in the previous column	Minimum distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE to non-metallic barrier  Barrier flammability category, if other than metal	Minimum distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES to the components or parts  (see figure 13)		Flammability category of components and parts according to IEC 60707, if the distance is less than the minimum distance required in the previous column	Minimum distance from POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE to non-metallic barrier.  Barrier flammability category, if other than metal
	Down-wards or side-ways	Up-wards			Down-wards or side-ways	Up-wards		
V (peak) a.c. or d.c.								
>50 up to and including 400	13 mm	50 mm	HB75	No requirement	13 mm	50 mm	V-1	5 mm V-1
>400 up to and including 4 000	13 mm	50 mm	V-1	5 mm V-1	20 mm	50 mm	V-1	5 mm V-0
>4 000					See 20.2			

Wood and WOOD-BASED MATERIAL with a thickness of at least 6 mm is considered to fulfil the V-1 requirement of this subclause.

For apparatus containing voltages exceeding 4 kV under normal operating conditions and where protection is based on distances exceeding those as specified in table 21, the material of the outer enclosure shall comply with the flammability category HB40 or better according to IEC 60707. However, no flammability requirements apply to those parts or areas of the outer enclosure of the apparatus which are protected by barriers or internal FIRE ENCLOSURES.

*Compliance is checked for the smallest thickness used in accordance with IEC 60707 or clause G.1 of annex G.*

## 20.2 FIRE ENCLOSURE

**20.2.1** POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCES with open-circuit voltages exceeding 4 kV (peak) a.c. or d.c. under normal operating conditions shall be contained in a FIRE ENCLOSURE which shall comply with the flammability category V-1 or better according to IEC 60707.

A FIRE ENCLOSURE is not required if

- the open-circuit voltage of the POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE is limited to a value  $< 4$  kV by means of an electronic protective circuit, or
- the open-circuit voltage of the POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE does not exceed 4 kV at the moment the faulty connection or interruption occurs.

*The voltage is measured with the smallest distance across a faulty connection or interruption by which arcing could start.*

Wood and WOOD-BASED MATERIAL with a thickness of at least 6 mm is considered to fulfil the V-1 requirement of this subclause.

*Compliance is checked for the smallest thickness used in accordance with IEC 60707 or clause G.1 of annex G.*

**20.2.2** Internal FIRE ENCLOSURES shall not have openings for ventilation exceeding 1 mm in width regardless of length.

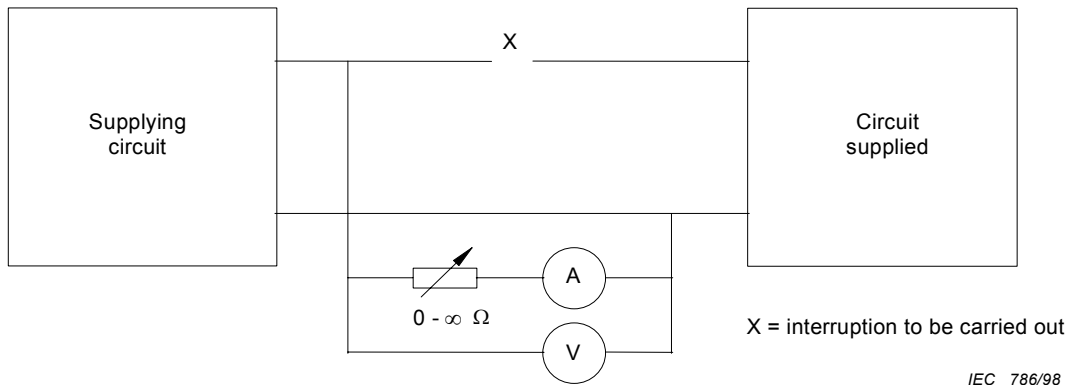
Openings for connecting wires shall be filled completely by the wires.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement.*

**20.2.3** If the requirements of 20.2.1 and 20.2.2 are met by an internal FIRE ENCLOSURE no flammability requirements apply to the outer enclosure of the apparatus and no passive flammability requirements apply to components or parts outside the internal FIRE ENCLOSURE, unless required elsewhere in the standard.

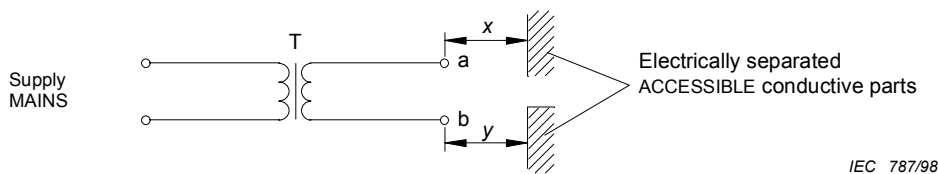
Insulation of internal wiring complying with 20.1.2 is considered to constitute part of an internal FIRE ENCLOSURE.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*



NOTE See 4.3.

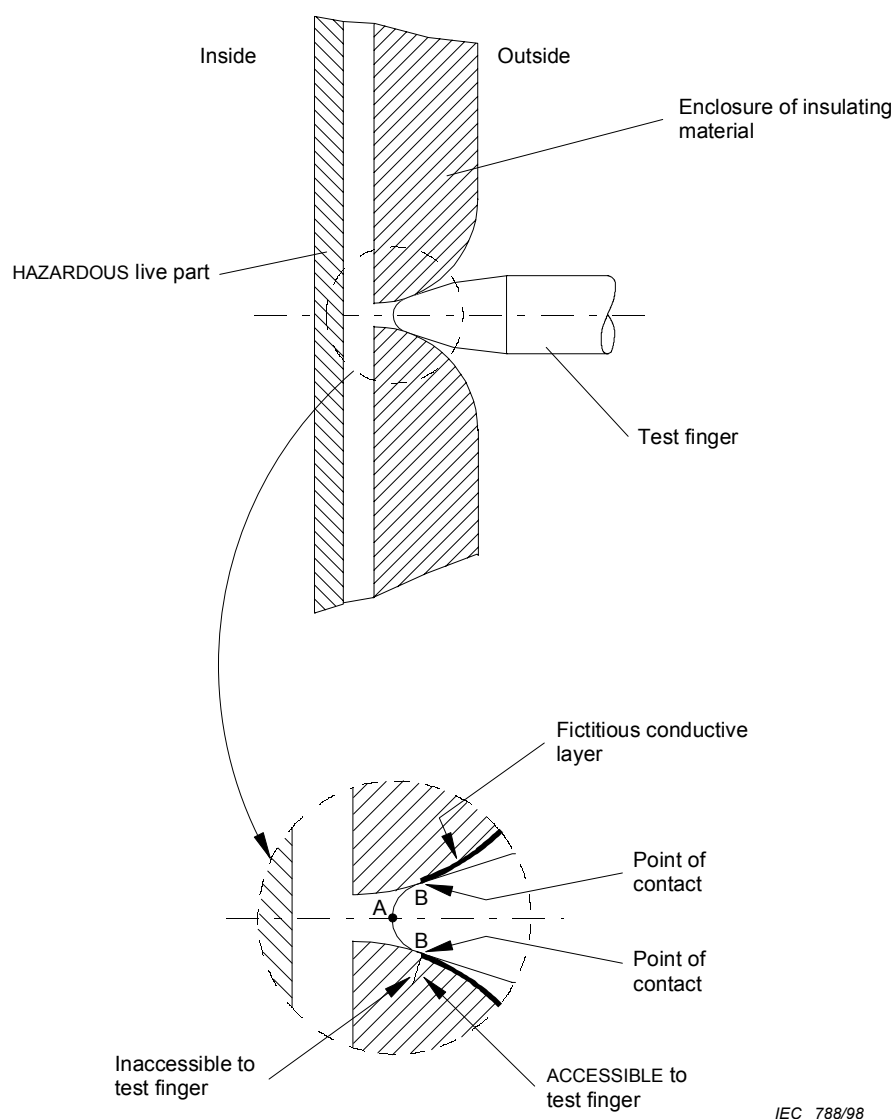
Figure 1 – Test circuit for fault conditions



The diagram shows a SEPARATING TRANSFORMER T, where point a is HAZARDOUS LIVE relative to point b. If a and b are inside the apparatus, the sum of the distances x and y is taken into account for the purpose of checking compliance with 8.6.

NOTE See 8.6.

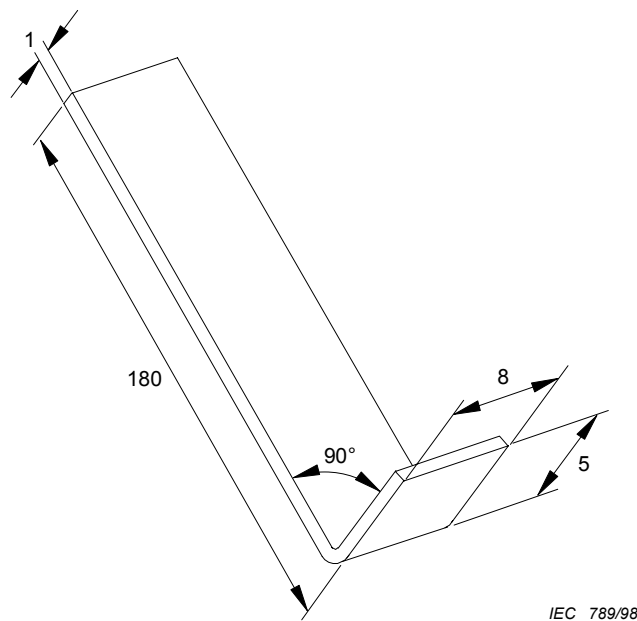
Figure 2 – Example of an assessment of REINFORCED INSULATION



Point A is used for determining accessibility (see 9.1.1.2)  
Point B is used for measurements of CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES (see clause 13)  
NOTE See 9.1.1.2 and 13.3.1.

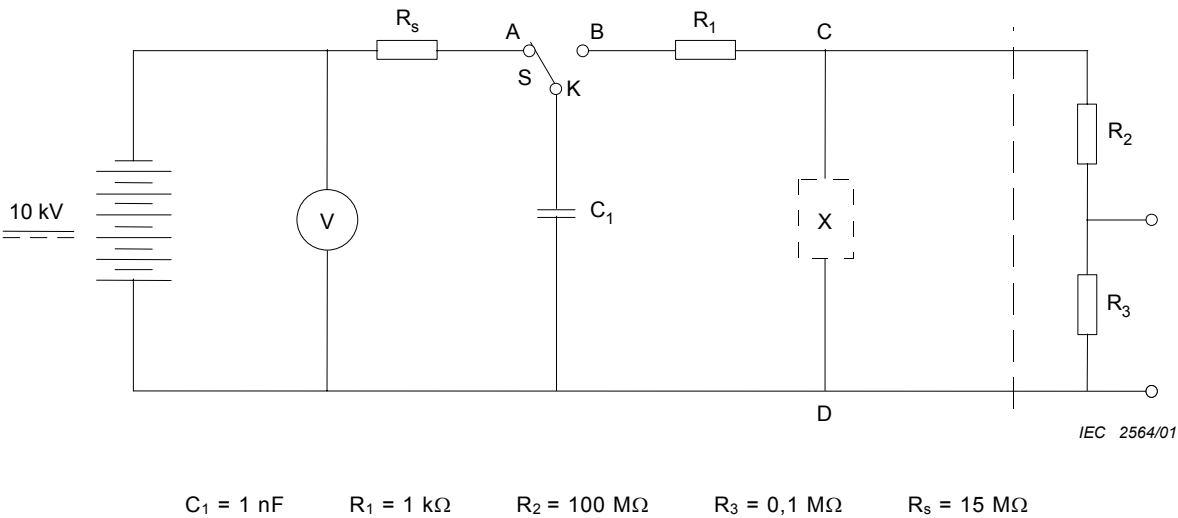
**Figure 3 – Example of ACCESSIBLE parts**





NOTE See 9.1.7. Dimensions in millimetres

Figure 4 – Test hook



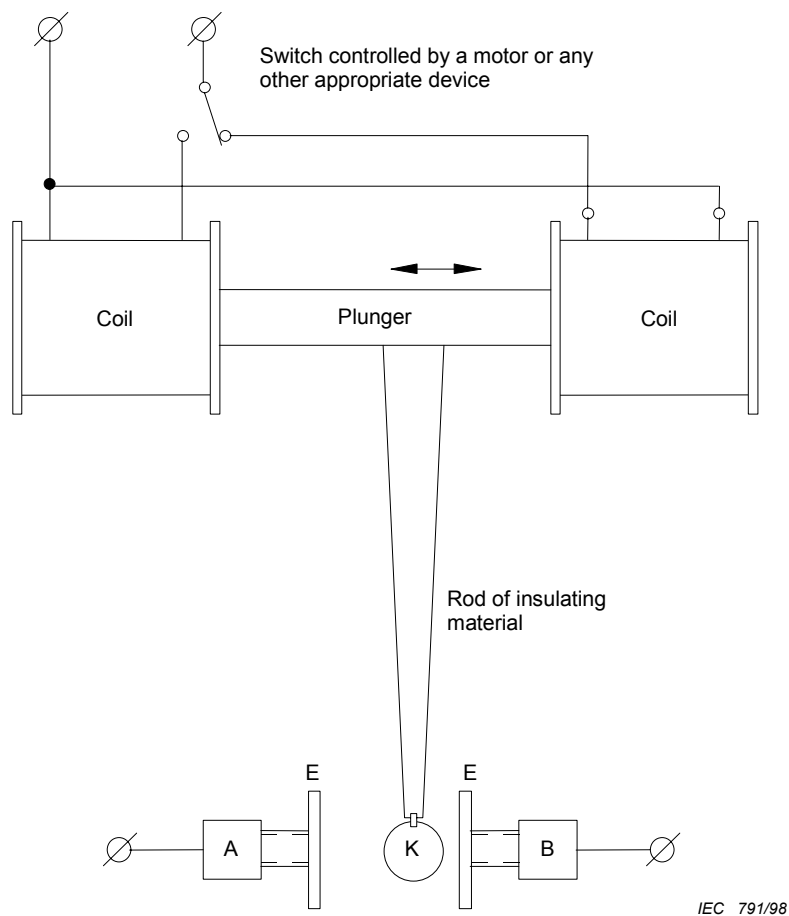
$C_1 = 1 \text{ nF}$       $R_1 = 1 \text{ k}\Omega$       $R_2 = 100 \text{ M}\Omega$       $R_3 = 0,1 \text{ M}\Omega$       $R_s = 15 \text{ M}\Omega$

The switch S is a critical part of the circuit. It shall be so designed that as little as possible of the available energy is dissipated in arcing or inadequate insulation. An example of such a switch is given in figure 5b.

The component X under test is connected to the terminals C and D. Optionally the voltage divider  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$  may be provided so that an oscilloscope connected across  $R_3$  permits the observation of the voltage waveform across the component under test. This voltage divider is compensated so that the observed waveform corresponds with that across the component under test.

NOTE See 10.1 and 14.1.

Figure 5a – Surge test – Test circuit



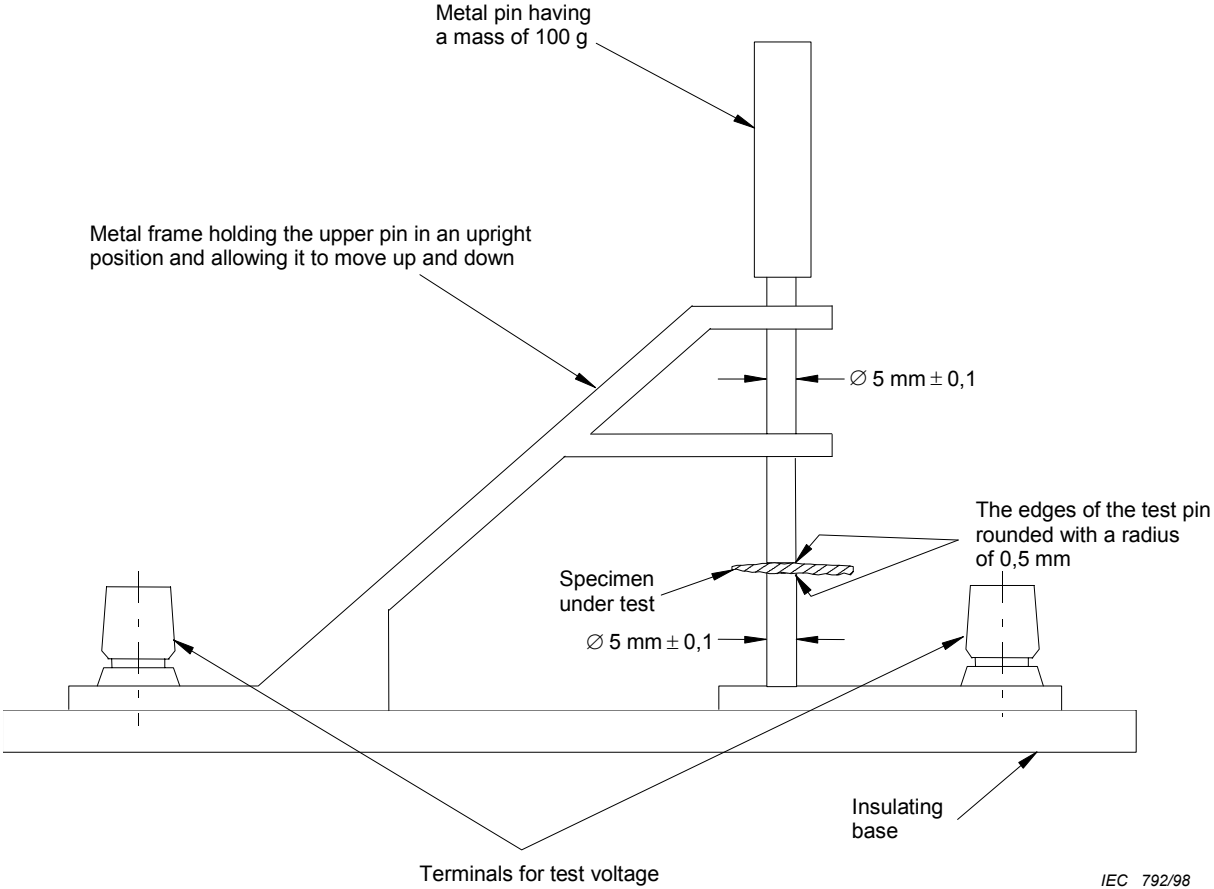
The switch (S in figure 5a) comprises the following parts:

- the brass pillars A and B support circular electrodes E spaced at a distance of 15 mm;
- K is a brass sphere of 7 mm diameter and is supported on a rigid rod of insulating material approximately 150 mm long.

A, B and K are connected as shown in figure 5a, K by means of a flexible wire.

Care shall be taken to avoid bouncing of sphere K.

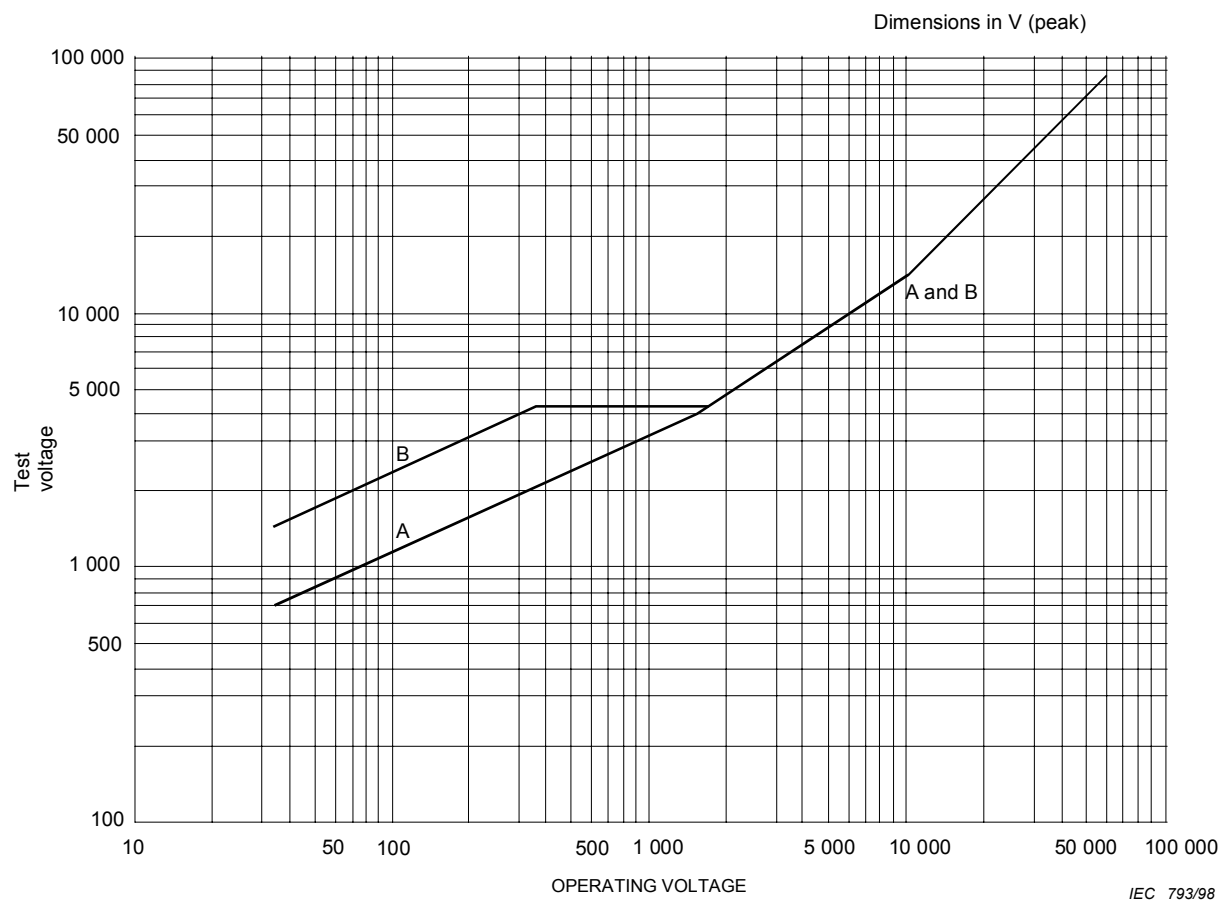
**Figure 5b – Surge test – Example of a switch to be used in the test circuit**



IEC 792/98

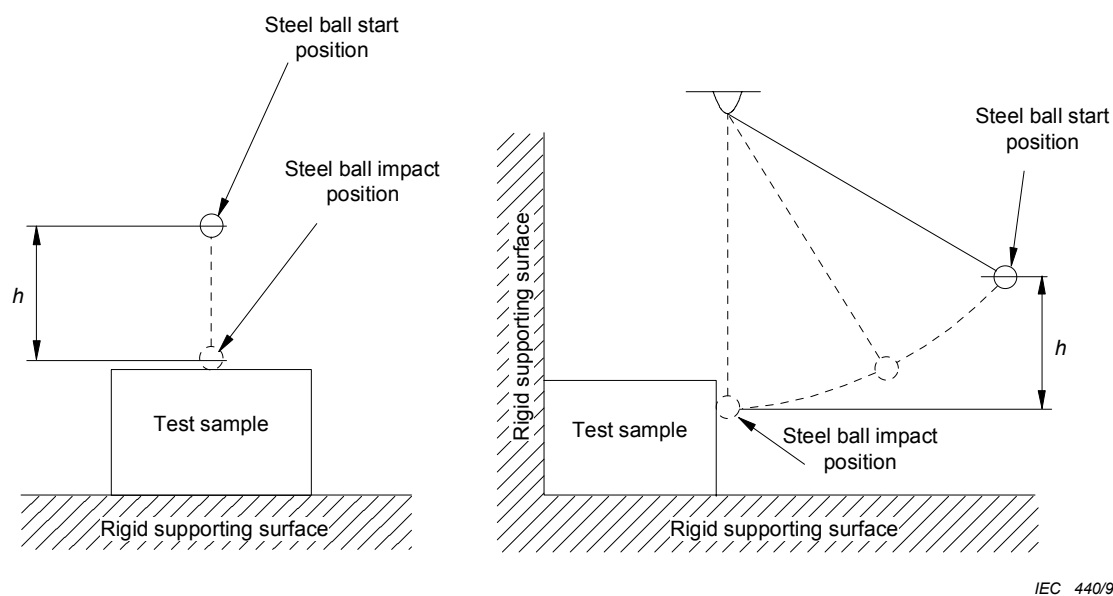
NOTE See 10.3.2.

Figure 6 – Dielectric strength test instrument



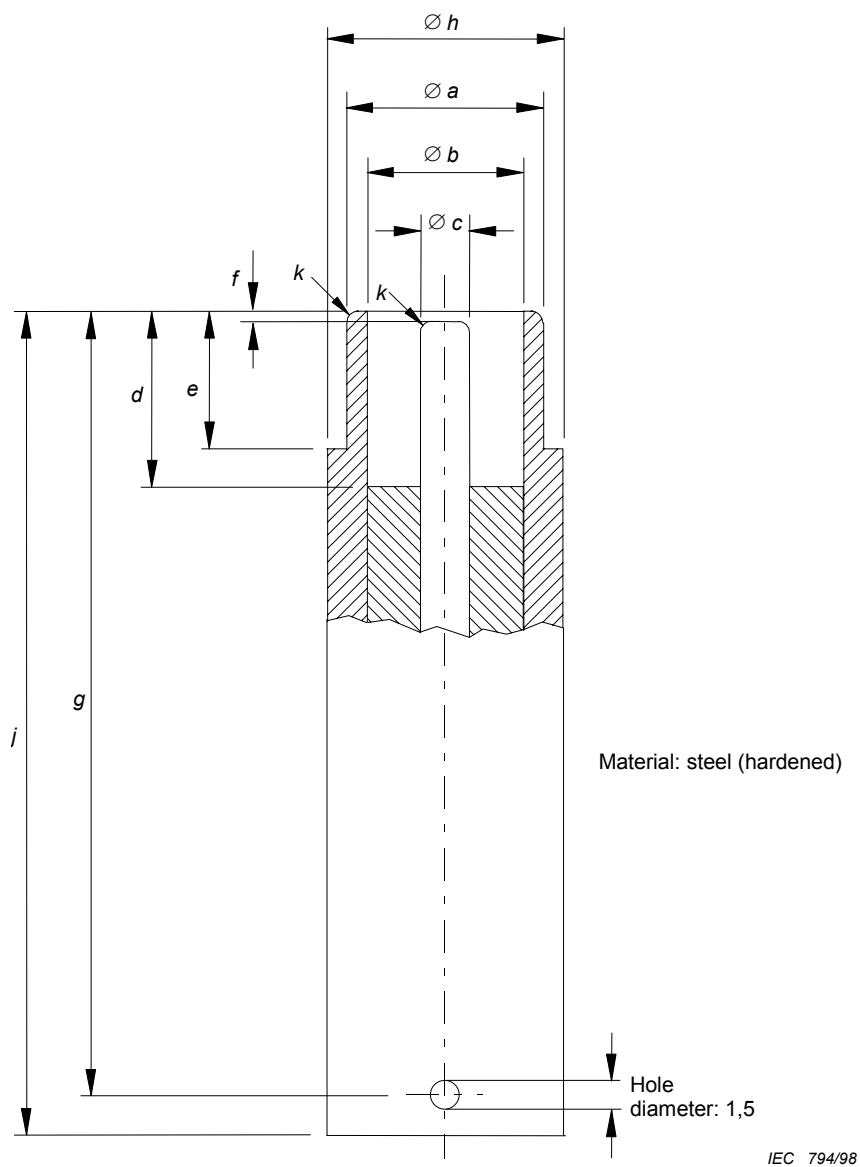
NOTE See 10.3.2 and table 5.

Figure 7 – Test voltages



NOTE See 12.1.3

Figure 8 – Impact test using a steel ball



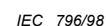
Dimensions in millimetres

<i>a</i>	<i>b</i> min.	<i>c</i>	<i>d</i> min.	<i>e</i> min.	<i>f</i>	<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>	<i>j</i>	<i>k</i> min.
9,576 <sup>0</sup> <sub>-0,1</sub>	8,05	2,438 <sup>0</sup> <sub>-0,1</sub>	9,1	7,112	0,8 ± 0,4	40 ± 0,4	12 ± 0,4	43 ± 0,4	0,3 radii

The mating section of the test plug is in accordance with IEC 60169-2 [3], figure 7.

NOTE See 12.5.

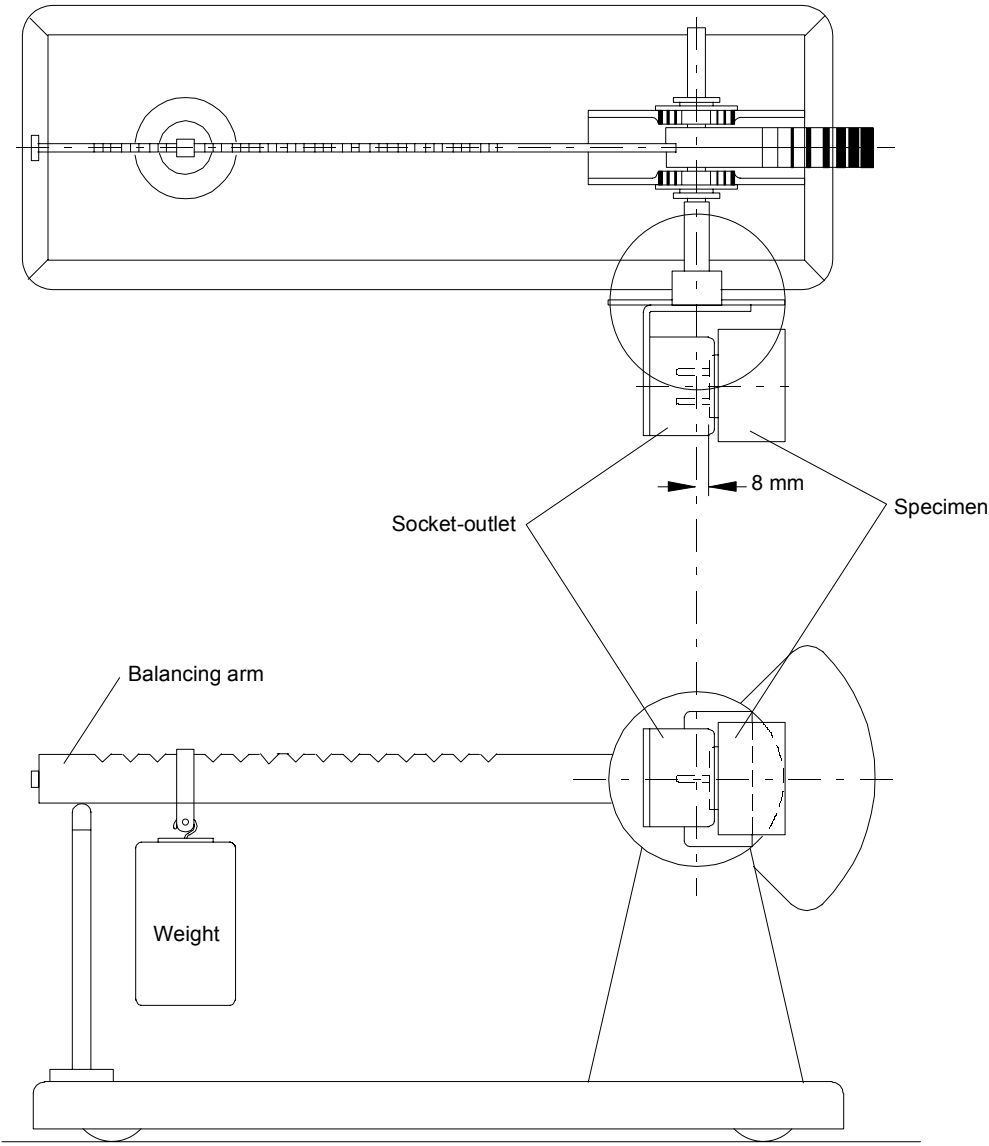
Figure 9 – Test plug for mechanical tests on antenna coaxial sockets


$$\log d = 0,78 \log (U/300)$$

where

$U$  is the peak voltage (V).

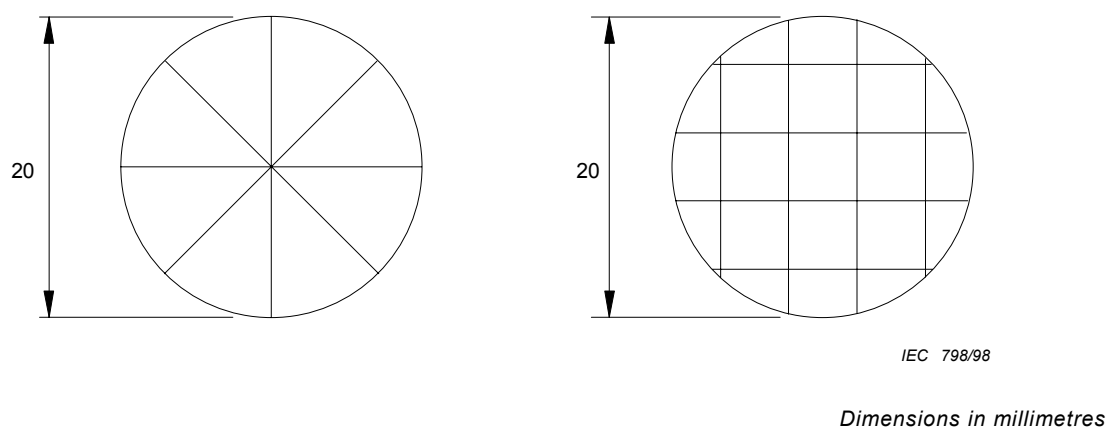
**Figure 10 – Minimum CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES on PRINTED BOARDS**



IEC 797/98

NOTE See 15.4.1.

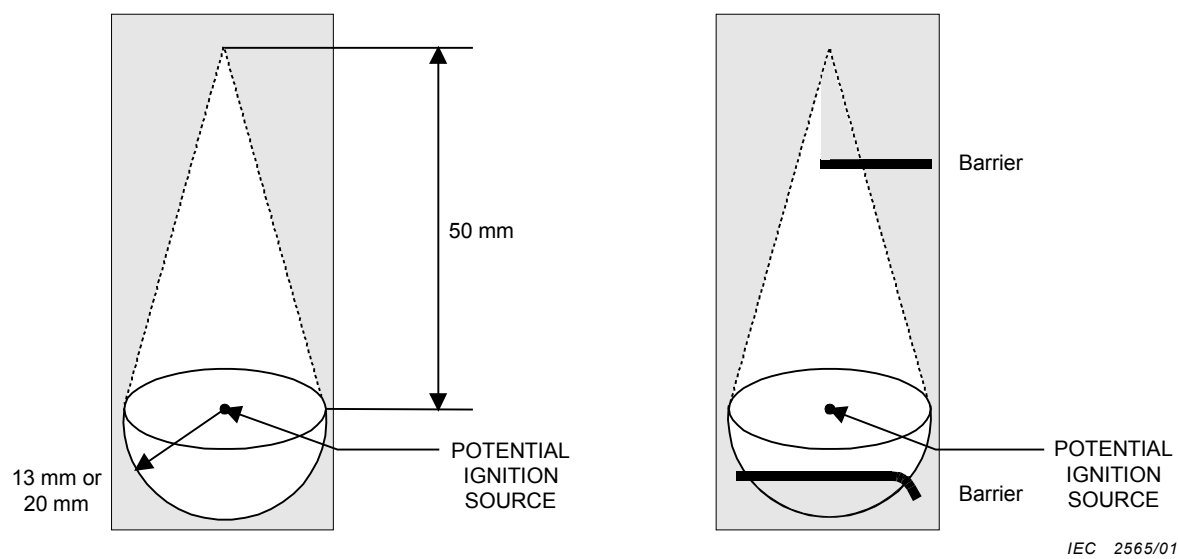
Figure 11 – Test apparatus for devices forming a part of the MAINS plug



NOTE See 18.2.2.

**Figure 12 – Scratch patterns for implosion test**





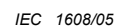
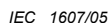
NOTE In the shaded areas, the requirements of 20.1.4 but not covered by table 21, apply.  
NOTE See 20.1.4

**Figure 13 – Distances from a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE and an example for the design of barriers**



IEC 1608/05

### Figure 14 – Mandrel

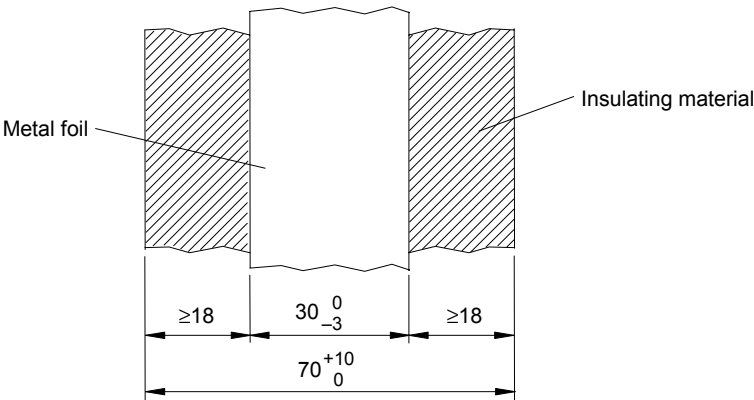


**Figure 15 – Initial position of mandrel**

**Figure 16 – Final position of mandrel** 



Dimensions in millimeters



IEC 1609/05

**Figure 17 – Position of metal foil on insulating material**

- NOTE 1 Figure 17 is the same as Figure 6c of IEC 61558-1.  
Figures 15 and 16 are slightly modified compared with Figure 6b from IEC 61558-1.
- NOTE 2 See 8.22.

## Annex A (normative)

### Additional requirements for apparatus with protection against splashing water

The requirements of this standard, supplemented or replaced by those contained in this annex, apply to apparatus provided with protection against splashing water.

#### A.5 Marking and instructions <sup>1)</sup>

*Add the following item after 5.1 i):*

##### A.5.1 j) Protection against splashing water

Apparatus provided with protection against splashing water shall be marked at least with the designation IPX4 in accordance with IEC 60529.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

A.5.4.1 a) Subclause 5.4.1 a) does not apply.

#### A.10 Insulation requirements

*Modify 10.2 as follows:*

##### A.10.2 Splash and humidity treatment

###### A.10.2.1 Splash treatment

The enclosure shall provide adequate protection against splashing water.

*Compliance is checked by the treatment specified below, which is made on the apparatus fitted with external flexible cords in accordance with the requirements of clause 16.*

*The apparatus is subjected to the test described in 14.2.4a), of IEC 60529.*

*Immediately after this treatment, the apparatus shall comply with the tests of 10.3 and inspection shall show that water, which may have entered the apparatus, does not cause any damage in the sense of this standard; in particular, there shall be no trace of water on insulations for which CREEPAGE DISTANCES are specified.*

###### A.10.2.2 Humidity treatment

Subclause 10.2 applies, *except that the duration of the test is seven days (168 h).*

---

<sup>1)</sup> The clause numbering of this annex refers to the clauses of this standard.

## Annex B (normative)

### Apparatus to be connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS

The requirements of this standard supplemented by the requirements of IEC 62151 as referenced in this annex apply to apparatus within the scope of this standard intended to be connected to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS.

☐ NOTE 1 In the CENELEC countries listed in IEC 62151, special national conditions apply. ☐

NOTE 2 Attention is drawn to the fact that the telecommunication authorities may impose additional requirements on apparatus to be connected to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS. Those requirements generally concern the protection of the networks as well as the USERS of the apparatus.

IEC 62151 clause 1, except for subclause 1.4, and clause 2 apply.

IEC 62151 clause 3 applies, with the following modification:

Replace 3.5.4 by the definition 2.4.10 of this standard.

IEC 62151 clause 4 applies, with the exception of 4.1.2, 4.1.3 and 4.2.1.2.

The requirements of 4.1.2 shall be replaced by the following requirements:

In a single TNV-0 CIRCUIT or in interconnected TNV-0 CIRCUITS, the voltage between any two conductors of the TNV-0 CIRCUIT or CIRCUITS and, between any one such conductor and earth shall not exceed the values given in clause 9.1.1.1 a) of this standard.

NOTE 3 A circuit that meets the above requirements, but that is subject to overvoltages from a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK, is a TNV-1 CIRCUIT.

The requirements of 4.1.3 shall be replaced by the following requirements:

In the event of a single failure of BASIC INSULATION or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION, or of a component (excluding components with DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION), the voltages between any two conductors of the TNV-0 CIRCUIT or CIRCUITS and between any one such conductor and earth shall not exceed the values given in 9.1.1.1 a) of this standard for more than 0,2 s. Moreover, the limit values as given in 11.1 shall not be exceeded.

Except as permitted in 4.1.4, one of the methods specified in 4.1.3.1, 4.1.3.2, or 4.1.3.3 shall be used.

Parts of the interface circuit that do not comply with the requirements for TNV-0 CIRCUITS under normal operating conditions shall therefore not be USER ACCESSIBLE.

The requirements of 4.2.1.2 shall be replaced by the following requirements:

NOTE 4 See also clauses 5 and 6.

Separation of TNV-0 CIRCUITS, TNV-1 CIRCUITS and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts from TNV-2 CIRCUITS and TNV-3 CIRCUITS shall be such that

- under normal operating conditions, the limits specified in 4.2.1.1 a) for TNV-1 CIRCUITS (35 V peak, or 60 V d.c.) are not exceeded on the TNV-0 CIRCUITS, TNV-1 CIRCUITS and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts.

- in the event of a single insulation fault, the limits specified in 4.2.1.1 b) for TNV-2 CIRCUITS and TNV-3 CIRCUITS under normal operating conditions (70 V peak, or 120 V d.c.) are not exceeded on the TNV-0 CIRCUITS, TNV-1 CIRCUITS and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts. However, after 0,2 s the voltage limits of 4.1.2 (35 V peak, or 60 V d.c.) shall apply.

The separation requirements will be met if BASIC INSULATION is provided as indicated in table B.1, which also shows where 6.1 applies; other solutions are not excluded.

**Table B.1 – Separation of TNV circuits**

Parts being separated		Separation
TNV-0 CIRCUIT or ACCESSIBLE conductive parts	TNV-1 CIRCUIT	6.1
	TNV-2 CIRCUIT	BASIC INSULATION
	TNV-3 CIRCUIT	BASIC INSULATION and 6.1
TNV-1 CIRCUIT	TNV-2 CIRCUIT	BASIC INSULATION and 6.1
TNV-2 CIRCUIT	TNV-3 CIRCUIT	6.1
TNV-1 CIRCUIT	TNV-3 CIRCUIT	BASIC INSULATION
TNV-1 CIRCUIT	TNV-1 CIRCUIT	functional insulation
TNV-2 CIRCUIT	TNV-2 CIRCUIT	functional insulation
TNV-3 CIRCUIT	TNV-3 CIRCUIT	functional insulation

BASIC INSULATION is not required provided that all of the following are met:

- the TNV-0 CIRCUIT, TNV-1 CIRCUIT or ACCESSIBLE conductive part shall be connected to a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL in accordance with this standard; and
- the installation instructions specify that the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL shall be permanently connected to earth; and
- the test of 4.2.1.5 shall be carried out if the TNV-2 or TNV-3 CIRCUIT is intended to receive signals or power that are generated externally during normal operation (for example in a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK).

At the choice of the manufacturer, it is permitted to treat a TNV-1 CIRCUIT or a TNV-2 CIRCUIT as a TNV-3 CIRCUIT. In this case, the TNV-1 CIRCUIT or TNV-2 CIRCUIT shall meet all the separation requirements for a TNV-3 CIRCUIT.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and measurement and, where necessary, by simulation of failures of components and insulations such as are likely to occur in the apparatus. Prior to the tests, insulation that does not meet the requirements for BASIC INSULATION is short-circuited.*

NOTE 5 Where BASIC INSULATION is provided and 6.1 also applies to this insulation, the test voltage prescribed in 6.2 is in most cases higher than that for BASIC INSULATION.

Clause 5 of IEC 62151 applies, with the following modification in 5.3.1:

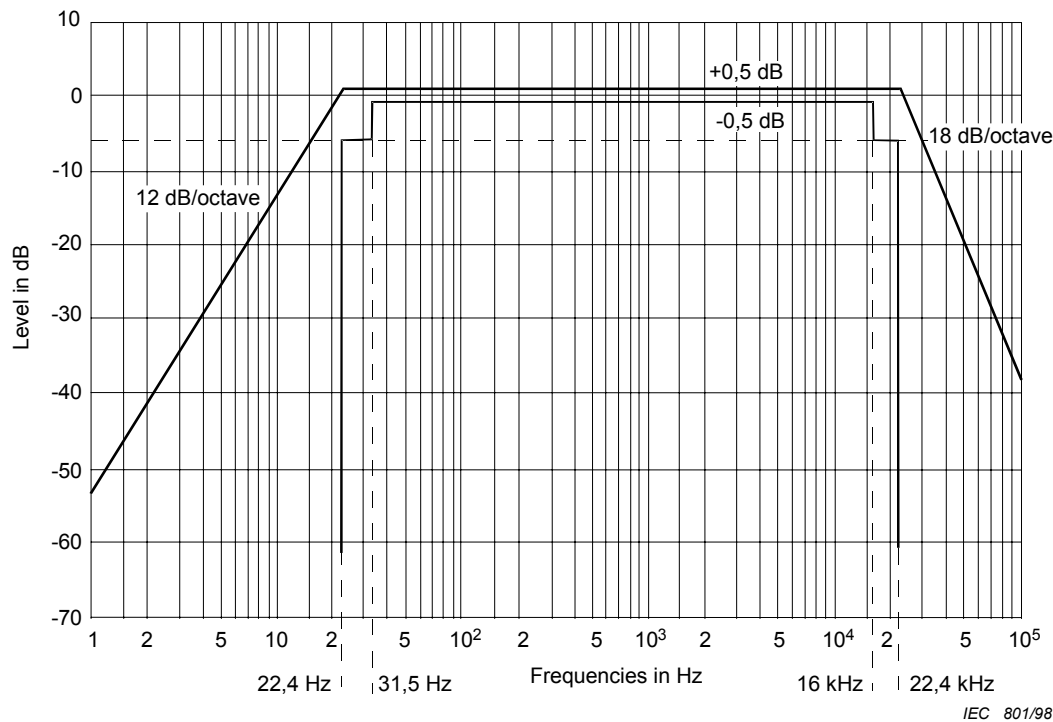
The value 1,6 shall be replaced by the value 1,8.

Clauses 6 and 7 of IEC 62151 apply.

Annex A up to and including annex C of IEC 62151 apply.

Annex C  
(normative)

Band-pass filter for wide-band noise measurement  
(Extract from IEC 60268-1)



Wide-band measurement (see 6.1 of IEC 60268-1)

The filter shall be a band-pass filter having a frequency response within the limits shown in figure C.1.

A band-pass filter which has a substantially constant transmission factor between 22,4 Hz and 22,4 kHz, decreasing outside this frequency band at the rates specified for octave-band filters having mid-band frequencies of 31,5 Hz and 16 000 Hz specified in IEC 61260, has a response falling within the limits of this specification.

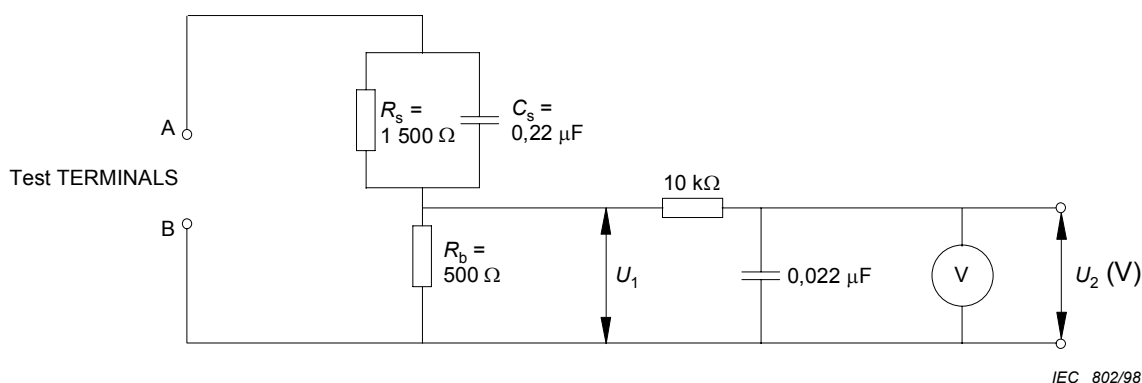
NOTE 1 Care should be taken when there may be strong signals just above or below the band-limits since in this case the results will depend, to some degree, on the individual frequency response of the filter actually used.

NOTE 2 See 4.1.6.

Figure C.1 – Band-pass filter for wide-band noise measurement  
(amplitude/frequency response limits)

## Annex D (normative)

### Measuring network for TOUCH CURRENTS



Resistance values in ohms ( $\Omega$ )

V: Voltmeter or oscilloscope  
(r.m.s. or peak reading)

Input resistance:  $\geq 1 \text{ M}\Omega$

Input capacitance:  $\leq 200 \text{ pF}$

Frequency range: 15 Hz to 1 MHz and d.c. respectively

NOTE Appropriate measures should be taken to obtain the correct value in case of non-sinusoidal waveforms.

The measuring instrument is calibrated by comparing the frequency factor of  $U_2$  with the solid line in figure F.2 of IEC 60990 at various frequencies. A calibration curve is constructed showing the deviation of  $U_2$  from the ideal curve as a function of frequency.

TOUCH CURRENT =  $U_2/500$  (peak value).

NOTE See 9.1.1.1.

**Figure D.1 – Measuring network for TOUCH CURRENTS according to IEC 60990**



**Annex E**  
(normative)

**Measurement of CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES**

The methods of measuring CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES which are specified in the following figures are used in interpreting the requirements of this standard.

In the following figures, the value of  $X$  is given in table E.1. Where the distance shown is less than  $X$ , the depth of the gap or groove is disregarded when measuring a CREEPAGE DISTANCE.

Table E.1 is valid only if the required minimum CLEARANCE is 3 mm or more. If the required minimum CLEARANCE is less than 3 mm, the value  $X$  is the lesser of

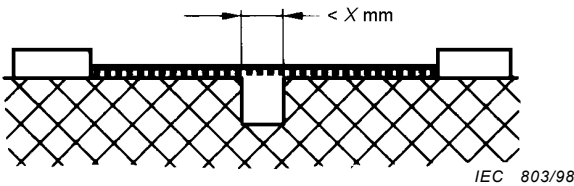
- the relevant value in table E.1, or
- one-third of the required minimum CLEARANCE.

**Table E.1 – Value of  $X$**

Pollution degree (see 13.1)	$X$ mm
1	0,25
2	1,0
3	1,5

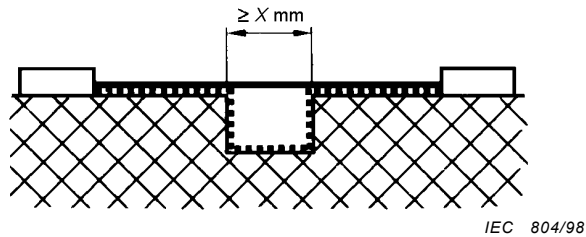
In the following figures, CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES are shown as follows:

..... CREEPAGE DISTANCE      ——— CLEARANCE



Condition: Path under consideration includes a parallel or converging-sided groove of any depth with width less than  $X$  mm.      Rule: CLEARANCE and CREEPAGE DISTANCE are measured directly across the groove.

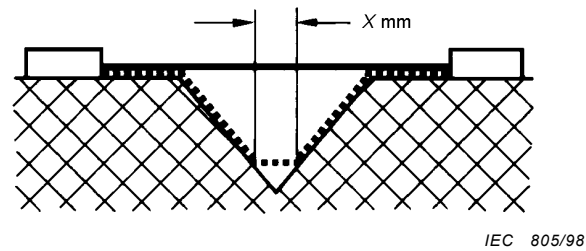
**Figure E.1 – Narrow groove**



Condition: Path under consideration includes a parallel-sided groove of any depth, and equal to or more than  $X \text{ mm}$  wide.

Rule: CLEARANCE is the "line-of-sight" distance, CREEPAGE DISTANCE path follows the contour of the groove.

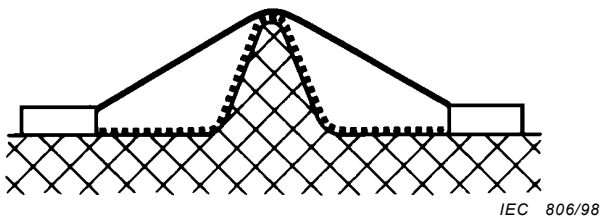
Figure E.2 – Wide groove



Condition: Path under consideration includes a V-shaped groove with internal angle of less than  $80^\circ$  and a width greater than  $X \text{ mm}$ .

Rule: CLEARANCE is the "line-of-sight" distance. CREEPAGE DISTANCE path follows the contour of the groove but "short-circuits" the bottom of the groove by a link  $X \text{ mm}$  long.

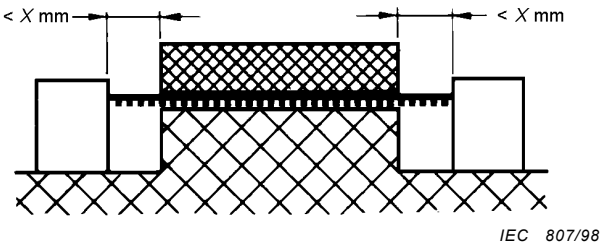
Figure E.3 – V-shaped groove



Condition: Path under consideration includes a rib.

Rule: CLEARANCE is the shortest direct air path over the top of the rib. CREEPAGE DISTANCE path follows the contour of the rib.

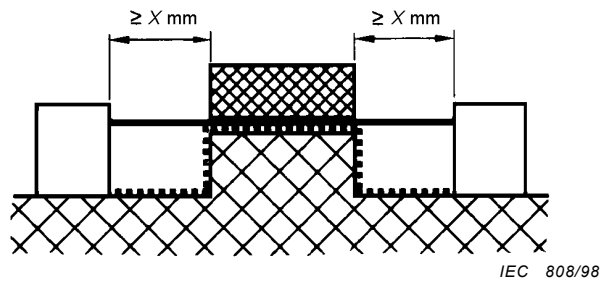
Figure E.4 – Rib



Condition: Path under consideration includes an uncemented joint with grooves less than  $X \text{ mm}$  wide on either side.

Rule: CREEPAGE DISTANCE and CLEARANCE path is the "line-of-sight" distance shown.

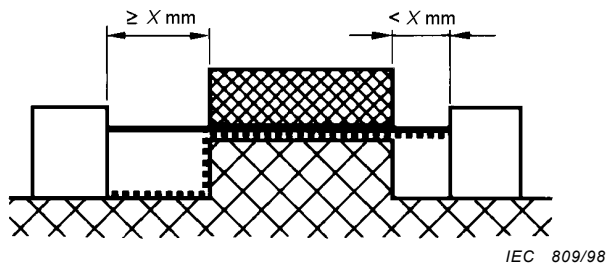
Figure E.5 – Uncemented joint with narrow groove



Condition: Path under consideration includes an uncemented joint with a groove equal to or more than X mm wide each side.

Rule: CLEARANCE is the “line-of-sight” distance. CREEPAGE DISTANCE path follows the contour of the groove.

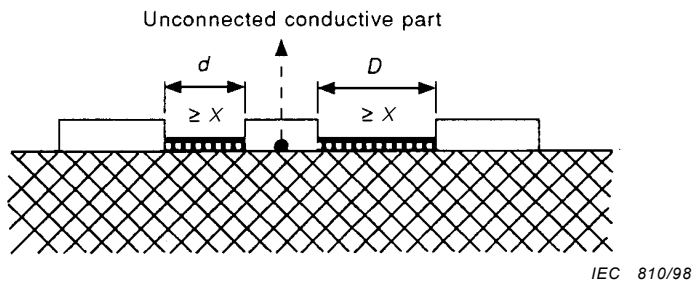
Figure E.6 – Uncemented joint with wide groove



Condition: Path under consideration includes an uncemented joint with a groove on one side less than X mm wide and a groove on the other equal to or more than X mm wide.

Rule: CLEARANCE and CREEPAGE DISTANCE paths are as shown in figure E.7.

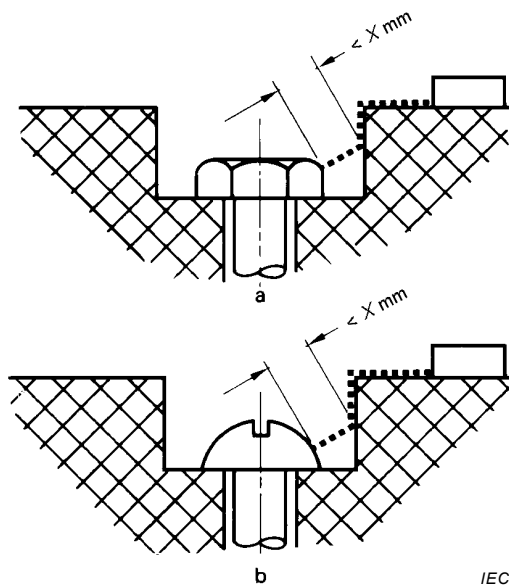
Figure E.7 – Uncemented joint with narrow and wide grooves



Condition: Insulation distance with intervening, unconnected conductive part.

Rule: CLEARANCE is the distance  $d + D$ , CREEPAGE DISTANCE is also  $d + D$ . Where the value of  $d$  or  $D$  is smaller than  $X$  it shall be considered as zero.

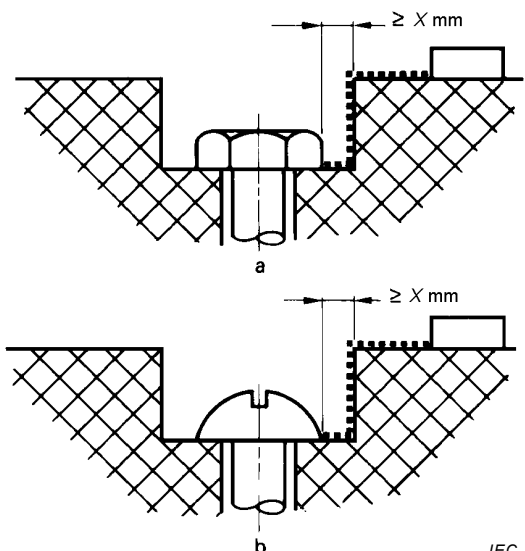
Figure E.8 – Intervening, unconnected conductive part



IEC 811/98

Gap between head of screw and wall of recess too narrow to be taken into account.

**Figure E.9 – Narrow recess**



IEC 812/98

Gap between head of screw and wall of recess wide enough to be taken into account.

**Figure E.10 – Wide recess**

## Annex F (normative)

### Table of electrochemical potentials

Magnesium, magnesium alloys	Zinc, zinc alloys	80 tin/20 zinc on steel, zinc on iron or steel	Aluminium	Cadmium on steel	Aluminium/magnesium alloy	Mild steel	Duralumin	Lead	Chromium on steel, soft solder	Cr on Ni on steel, tin on steel, 12 % Cr stainless steel	High chromium stainless steel	Copper, copper alloys	Silver solder, austenitic stainless steel	Nickel on steel	Silver	Rhodium on silver on copper, silver/gold alloy	Carbon	Gold, platinum
0	0,5	0,55	0,7	0,8	0,85	0,9	1,0	1,05	1,1	1,15	1,25	1,35	1,4	1,45	1,6	1,65	1,7	1,75
	0	0,05	0,2	0,3	0,35	0,4	0,5	0,55	0,6	0,65	0,75	0,85	0,9	0,95	1,1	1,15	1,2	1,25
		0	0,15	0,25	0,3	0,35	0,45	0,5	0,55	0,6	0,7	0,8	0,85	0,9	1,05	1,1	1,15	1,2
			0	0,1	0,15	0,2	0,3	0,35	0,4	0,45	0,55	0,65	0,7	0,75	0,9	0,95	1,0	1,05
				0	0,05	0,1	0,2	0,25	0,3	0,35	0,45	0,55	0,6	0,65	0,8	0,85	0,9	0,95
					0	0,05	0,15	0,2	0,25	0,3	0,4	0,5	0,55	0,6	0,75	0,8	0,85	0,9
						0	0,1	0,15	0,2	0,25	0,35	0,45	0,5	0,55	0,7	0,75	0,8	0,85
							0	0,05	0,1	0,15	0,25	0,35	0,4	0,45	0,6	0,65	0,7	0,75
								0	0,05	0,1	0,2	0,3	0,35	0,4	0,55	0,6	0,66	0,7
									0	0,05	0,15	0,25	0,3	0,35	0,5	0,55	0,6	0,65
										0	0,1	0,2	0,25	0,3	0,45	0,5	0,55	0,6
											0	0,1	0,15	0,2	0,35	0,4	0,45	0,5
												0	0,05	0,1	0,25	0,3	0,35	0,4
													0	0,05	0,2	0,25	0,3	0,35
														0	0,15	0,2	0,25	0,3
															0	0,05	0,1	0,15
																0	0,05	0,1
																	0	0,05
																		0

Cr = Chromium  
Ni = Nickel

NOTE 1 Corrosion due to electrochemical action between dissimilar metals which are in contact is minimized if the combined electrochemical potential is below about 0,6 V. In the above table the combined electrochemical potentials are listed for a number of pairs of metals in common use.

NOTE 2 See 15.2.

## Annex G (normative)

### Flammability test methods



**G.1** *If no test specimens in accordance with IEC 60707, clause 4 are available, the following test methods may be applied.*

*The test is made according to IEC 60695-2-2 on three specimens of end products as used in the apparatus.*

*For the purpose of this standard, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-2-2:*

*Clause 7 – Initial measurements; not applicable*

*Clause 8 – Test procedure*

– *Subclause 8.2*

*The first sentence is replaced by the following:*

*The test specimens are mounted in such a way as to simulate the conditions obtained when installed in the apparatus.*

– *Subclause 8.4*

*Replace the third paragraph by the following:*

*The test flame is applied to several points of the specimen, so that all critical areas are tested.*

*Clause 9 – Observations and measurements.*

– *Subclause 9.2*

*The second paragraph is replaced by the following:*

*Duration of the burning denotes the time interval from the moment the test flame is removed until any flame has been extinguished.*

**G.1.1** *If flammability category V-0 according to IEC 60707 is required, in addition, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-2-2.*

*Clause 5 – Severities*

*The values of duration of application of the test flame are as follows:*

*The test flame is applied for 10 s. If a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 15 s, the test flame is applied again for 1 min at the same point or at any other point. If again a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 15 s, the test flame is then applied for 2 min at the same point or at any other point.*

*Clause 10 – Evaluation of test results*

*The existing text is replaced by the following:*

*After the first application of the test flame, the test specimens shall not be consumed completely. After any application of the test flame, the duration of the burning of any specimen shall not exceed 15 s, while the average burning time shall not exceed 10 s. The tissue paper shall not ignite and the board shall not scorch.*

**G.1.2** *If flammability category V-1 according to IEC 60707 is required, in addition, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-2-2.*

**Clause 5 – Severities**

*The values of duration of application of the test flame are as follows:*

*The test flame is applied for 10 s. If a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 30 s, the test flame is applied again for 1 min at the same point or at any other point. If again a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 30 s, the test flame is then applied for 2 min at the same point or at any other point.*

**Clause 6 – Preconditioning (only applicable to components of 14.4.1)**

*The existing text is replaced by:*

*The specimens are stored for 2 h in an oven at a temperature of  $(100 \pm 2) ^\circ\text{C}$ .*

**Clause 10 – Evaluation of test results**

*The existing text is replaced by the following:*

*After the first application of the test flame, the test specimen shall not be consumed completely. After any application of the test flame, any self-sustaining flame shall extinguish within 30 s. No burning of the tissue paper shall occur and the board shall not scorch.*

**G.1.3** *If flammability category V-2 according to IEC 60707 is required, in addition, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-2-2.*

**Clause 5 – Severities**

*The values of duration of application of the test flame are as follows:*

*The test flame is applied for 10 s. If a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 30 s, the test flame is applied again for 1 min at the same point or at any other point. If again a self-sustaining flame does not last longer than 30 s, the test flame is then applied for 2 min at the same point or at any other point.*

**Clause 10 – Evaluation of test results**

*The existing text is replaced by the following:*

*After the first application of the test flame, the test specimen shall not be consumed completely.*

*After any application of the test flame, any self-sustaining flame shall extinguish within 30 s.*

**G.1.4** *If flammability category HB75 or HB40 according to IEC 60707 is required, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-11-10.*

*Three specimens, 125 mm  $\pm$  5 mm in length by 13 mm  $\pm$  0.5 mm in width, cut from the thinnest part to be tested, are subjected to the burning test as described in IEC 60695-11-10, clause 8, Test method A.*

*The material shall be classified HB75 or HB40 respectively as described in 8.4 of IEC 60695-11-10.*

**G.2** *Compliance of cables and insulation of wires is checked according to IEC 60695-2-2.*

*For the purpose of this standard, the following applies with regard to IEC 60695-2-2.*

**Clause 5 – Severities**

*The values of duration of the application of the test flame are as follows:*

- first specimen: 10 s
- second specimen: 60 s
- third specimen: 120 s

*Clause 7 – Initial measurements: not applicable*

*Clause 8 – Test procedure*

- *Add the following to 8.4:*

*The burner is supported so that its axis is in an angle of 45° to the vertical. The cable or wire is held in an angle of 45° to the vertical, its axis being in a vertical plane perpendicular to the vertical plane containing the axis of the burner.*

- *Subclause 8.5 is replaced by the following:*

*The test is made on three specimens taken from each type of cable or wire as used in the apparatus, for example with additional screening and sleeves.*

*Clause 9 – Observations and measurements*

- *Subclause 9.1 does not apply.*
- *Subclause 9.2*

*The second paragraph is replaced by the following:*

*Duration of the burning denotes the time interval from the moment the test flame is removed until any flame has extinguished.*

*Clause 10 – Evaluation of the results*

*The existing text is replaced by the following:*

*During the test, any burning of the insulating materials shall be steady and shall not spread appreciably. Any flame shall self-extinguish in 30 s from the removal of the test flame.*

**G.3** A barrier shall comply with the following requirements.

*Three specimens are subjected to the following tests:*

- 1) *In case of a non-metallic barrier, each test specimen is fixed horizontally and a needle flame as specified in IEC 60695-2-2 is applied from below with an angle of 45°.*

*The top of the flame shall be:*

- a) *applied to the barrier as used in the appliance, at a location likely to become ignited because of its actual proximity and distance to the potential ignition source*

*or*

- b) *applied to a sample plate with the same thickness and made of the same material, touching the undersurface of this sample plate in the middle.*

*The flame shall be applied for 60 s in the same position.*

*The needle flame shall not penetrate the test specimen and after the application there shall be no hole in the test specimen.*

*No failure is allowed.*

- 2) *In case of openings in a barrier regardless of its material, the requirements shown in figure 13 apply, unless it is not possible for the needle flame as specified in IEC 60695-2-2 to penetrate the barrier.*

*Compliance is tested according to 1) above. After the test there shall be no change with regard to the openings in the barrier. No failure is allowed.*



**Annex H**  
(normative)

**Insulated winding wires for use without interleaved insulation**  
(see 8.17)

The annex specifies winding wires whose insulation may be used to provide BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY, DOUBLE or REINFORCED INSULATION in wound components without interleaved insulation.

This annex covers round winding wires having diameters between 0,05 mm and 5,0 mm.

**H.1** *Intentionally kept free*

**H.2** **Type tests**

*The wire shall pass the following type tests, carried out at a temperature between 15 °C and 35 °C and a relative humidity between 45 % and 75 %, unless otherwise specified.*

**H.2.1** **Dielectric strength**

*The test sample is prepared according to 4.4.1 of IEC 60851-5 (for a twisted pair). The sample is then subjected to the relevant test of 10.3 of this standard, without the humidity treatment of 10.2, with a test voltage not less than twice the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, with a minimum of*

- 6 kV r.m.s. or 8,4 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, or
- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

**H.2.2** **Flexibility and adherence**

*Test 8 of IEC 60851-3, 5.1.1, using the mandrel diameters of table H.1.*

*The test sample is then examined in accordance with IEC 60851-3, 5.1.1.4, followed by the relevant test of 10.3 of this standard, without the humidity treatment of 10.2, except that the test voltage is applied between the wire and the mandrel. The test voltage shall be not less than the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, with a minimum of*

- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, or
- 1,5 kV r.m.s. or 2,1 kV (peak) for BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

**Table H.1 – Mandrel diameter**

Nominal conductor diameter mm	Mandrel diameter mm ± 0,2 mm
0,05 - 0,34	4,0
0,35 - 0,49	6,0
0,50 - 0,74	8,0
0,75 - 2,49	10,0
2,50 - 5,00	4 times the conductor diameter <sup>a</sup>
<sup>a</sup> In accordance with IEC 60317-43.	

*The tension to be applied to the wire during winding on the mandrel is calculated from the wire diameter to be equivalent to 118 MPa  $\pm$  10 % (118 N/mm<sup>2</sup>  $\pm$  10 %)*

### H.2.3 Heat shock

*Test 9 of IEC 60851-6, followed by the dielectric strength test of table 5 of this standard except that the test voltage is applied between the wire and the mandrel. The test voltage shall be not less than the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, with a minimum of*

- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, or
- 1,5 kV r.m.s or 2,1 kV (peak) for BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

*The oven temperature is the relevant temperature of the thermal class of insulation in table H. 2.*

*The mandrel diameter and tension applied to the wire during winding on the mandrel are as in H.2.2.*

*The dielectric strength test is conducted at room temperature after removal from the oven.*

**Table H.2 – Oven temperature**

Thermal class	A (105)	E (120)	B (130)	F (155)	H (180)
Oven temperature °C $\pm$ 5 °C	200	215	225	240	260

### H.2.4 Retention of dielectric strength after bending

*Five samples are prepared as in H.2.2 above and tested as follows. Each sample is removed from the mandrel, placed in a container and positioned so that it can be surrounded by at least 5 mm of metal shot. The ends of the conductor in the sample shall be sufficiently long to avoid flash-over. The shot shall be not more than 2 mm in diameter and shall consist of balls of stainless steel, nickel or nickel plated iron. The shot is gently poured into the container until the sample under test is covered by at least 5 mm of shot. The shot shall be cleaned periodically with a suitable solvent (for example 1,1,1-trichloroethane).*

NOTE The above test procedure is reproduced from 4.6.1 c) of IEC 60851-5, second edition, including amendment 1, now withdrawn. It is not included in the third edition of that standard.

*The test voltage shall be not less than the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, with a minimum of*

- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, or
- 1,5 kV r.m.s or 2,1 kV (peak) for BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

*The test voltage is applied between the shot and the conductor.*

### H.3 Testing during manufacture

The wire shall be subjected by the wire manufacturer to dielectric strength tests during manufacture as specified in H.3.1 and H. 3.2

#### H.3.1 ROUTINE TEST

The test voltage for ROUTINE TEST shall be the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, with a minimum of

- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, or
- 1,5 kV r.m.s. or 2,1 kV (peak) for BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

#### H.3.2 Sampling test

Twisted pair samples shall be tested in accordance with 4.4.1 of IEC 60851-5. The minimum breakdown voltage shall be twice the appropriate voltage in table 5 of this standard, but not less than

- 6 kV r.m.s or 8,4 kV (peak) for REINFORCED INSULATION, or
- 3 kV r.m.s. or 4,2 kV (peak) for BASIC or SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION.

## **Annex J** **(normative)**

### **Alternative method for determining minimum CLEARANCES**

This annex contains the alternative method for determining minimum CLEARANCES referred to in 13.3.

There is no dielectric strength test to verify CLEARANCES.

#### **J.1 Summary of the procedure for determining minimum CLEARANCES**

**NOTE** The minimum CLEARANCES for BASIC, SUPPLEMENTARY and REINFORCED INSULATION, whether in a primary circuit or another circuit, depend on the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE. The REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE depends in turn on the combined effect of the normal OPERATING VOLTAGE (including repetitive peaks due to internal circuitry such as switch mode power supplies) and non-repetitive overvoltages due to external transients.

To determine the minimum value for each required CLEARANCE, the following steps shall be used.

- a) Measure the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE across the CLEARANCE in question.
- b) If the apparatus is MAINS operated:
  - determine the MAINS transient voltage (J.2); and
  - calculate the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage.
- c) Use the rules in J.4 a) and the above voltage values to determine the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE for a.c. MAINS supply transients and internal transients. In the absence of transients coming from a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK, go to step g).
- d) If the apparatus is to be connected to a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK, determine the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE (J.3).
- e) Use the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE and the rules in J.4 b) to determine the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE for TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK transients. In the absence of MAINS and internal transients, go to step g).
- f) Use the rules in J.4 c) to determine the total REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE.
- g) Use the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE to determine the minimum CLEARANCE (J.6).

#### **J.2 Determination of MAINS transient voltage**

For apparatus to be supplied from the a.c. MAINS supply, the value of the MAINS transient voltage depends on the overvoltage category and the nominal value of the a.c. MAINS voltage. In general, CLEARANCES in apparatus intended to be connected to the a.c. MAINS supply shall be designed for a MAINS transient voltage in overvoltage category II.

The applicable value of the MAINS transient voltage shall be determined from the overvoltage category and the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage using table J.1.

Table J.1 – MAINS transient voltages

Nominal a.c. MAINS voltage line-to-neutral  Up to and including  V r.m.s.	MAINS transient voltage  V (peak)	
	Overvoltage category	
	I	II
50	330	500
100	500	800
150 <sup>a</sup>	800	1 500
300 <sup>b</sup>	1 500	2 500
600 <sup>c</sup>	2 500	4 000
ⓘ ⓘ.		
<sup>a</sup> Including 120/208 V or 120/240 V		
<sup>b</sup> Including 230/400 V or 277/480 V		
<sup>c</sup> Including 400/690 V		

**J.3 Determination of TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE**

If the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE is not known for the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK in question, it shall be taken as:

- 1 500 V<sub>peak</sub> if the circuit connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is a TNV-1 CIRCUIT or a TNV-3 CIRCUIT; and
- 800 V<sub>peak</sub> if the circuit connected to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is a TNV-0 CIRCUIT or a TNV-2 CIRCUIT.

**J.4 Determination of REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE**

a) MAINS and internal transients

- circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS receiving the unattenuated MAINS transient:

In such a circuit, the effect of transients coming from a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK is ignored, and the following rules shall be applied:

Rule 1) If the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE  $U_{po}$  is less than the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS supply voltage, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE is the MAINS transient voltage determined in J.2;

$$U_{\text{REQUIRED WITHSTAND}} = U_{\text{MAINS transient}}$$

Rule 2) If the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE  $U_{po}$  is greater than the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE is the MAINS transient voltage determined in J.2, plus the difference between the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE and the peak value of the nominal a.c. MAINS voltage from table J.1.

$$U_{\text{REQUIRED WITHSTAND}} = U_{\text{MAINS transient}} + U_{po} - U_{\text{MAINS peak}}$$

- circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS whose supply circuit is CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS receives the unattenuated MAINS transient:

In such a circuit, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE shall be determined as follows, ignoring the effect of transients coming from TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORKS.

The above rules 1) and 2) are applied, with the MAINS transient voltage determined in J.2 replaced by a voltage that is one step smaller in the following list:

330, 500, 800, 1 500, 2 500 and 4 000 V<sub>peak</sub>.

However, this reduction is not permitted for a floating circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS unless it is in apparatus with a PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL and is separated from its circuit CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS by an earthed metal screen, connected to protective earth in accordance with 15.2.

Alternatively, the above rules 1) and 2) are applied but the voltage determined by measurement, see J.5 a), is taken as the MAINS transient voltage.

- circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS and circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS not receiving the unattenuated MAINS transient:

In such circuits, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE, ignoring the effect of transients coming from any TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK, is determined as follows. The above rules 1) and 2) are applied, but a voltage determined by measurement, see J.5 a), shall be taken as the MAINS transient voltage.

- circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS supplied by a d.c. source having capacitive filtering:

In any earthed circuit not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS supplied by a d.c. source with capacitive filtering, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE shall be taken as equal to the d.c. voltage.

#### b) TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK transients

If only transients from a TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK are involved, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE is the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE determined in J.3, unless a lower level is measured when tested according to J.5 b).

#### c) Combination of transients

If both transients a) and b) are involved, the REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE is the larger of the two voltages. The two values shall not be added together.

### J.5 Measurement of transient levels

The following tests are conducted only where it is required to determine whether or not transient voltage across the CLEARANCE in any circuit is lower than normal, due for example, to the effect of a filter in the apparatus. The transient voltage across the CLEARANCE is measured using the following test procedure.

*During the tests, the apparatus is connected to its separate SUPPLY APPARATUS, if any, but is not connected to the MAINS, nor to any TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK, and any surge suppressors in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS are disconnected.*

*A voltage-measuring device is connected across the CLEARANCE in question.*

- a) To measure the reduced level of transients due to MAINS overvoltages, the impulse test generator of annex K is used to generate 1,2/50  $\mu$ s impulses, with  $U_c$  equal to the MAINS transient voltage determined in J.2.

Three to six impulses of alternating polarity, with intervals of at least 1 s between impulses, are applied between each of the following points where relevant:

- line-to-line;
- all line conductors conductively joined together and neutral;
- all line conductors conductively joined together and protective earth;
- neutral and protective earth.

- b) To measure the reduced level of transients due to TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK overvoltages, the impulse test generator of annex K is used to generate 10/700  $\mu$ s impulses, with  $U_c$  equal to the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK TRANSIENT VOLTAGE determined in J.3.

Three to six impulses of alternating polarity, with intervals of at least 1 s between impulses, are applied between each of the following TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK connection points of a single interface type:

- each pair of TERMINALS (for example A and B or tip and ring) in an interface;
- all TERMINALS of a single interface type joined together and earth.

Only one of a set of identical circuits is tested.

## J.6 Determination of minimum CLEARANCES

Each CLEARANCE shall comply with the minimum dimensions given in table J.2, using the value of REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE determined according to J.4.

The specified CLEARANCES are not applicable to the air gap between the contacts of thermostats, THERMAL CUT-OUTS, overload protection devices, switches of microgap construction and similar components where the air gap varies with the contacts.

NOTE 1 For air gaps between the contacts of disconnect devices, see 8.19.1.

NOTE 2 CLEARANCES should not be reduced below the minimum specified values by manufacturing tolerances or by deformation which can occur due to handling, shock and vibration likely to be encountered during manufacture, transport and normal use.

NOTE 3 For apparatus to be operated at more than 2 000 m above sea level, table A.2 of IEC 60664-1 should be used in addition to table J.2.

Table J.2 – Minimum CLEARANCES

CLEARANCES in millimetres				
REQUIRED WITHSTAND VOLTAGE  V peak or d.c.	Minimum CLEARANCES in air			
	BASIC and SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION		REINFORCED INSULATION	
up to 400	0,2	(0,1)	0,4	(0,2)
800	0,2	(0,1)	0,4	(0,2)
1 000	0,3	(0,2)	0,6	(0,4)
1 200	0,4	(0,3)	0,8	(0,6)
1 500	0,8	(0,5)	1,6	(1)
2 000	1,3	(1)	2,6	(2)
2 500	2	(1,5)	4	(3)
3 000	2,6	(2)	5,2	(4)
4 000	4	(3)	6	
6 000	7,5		11	
8 000	11		16	
10 000	15		22	
12 000	19		28	
15 000	24		36	
25 000	44		66	
40 000	80		120	
50 000	100		150	
60 000	120		180	
80 000	173		260	
100 000	227		340	
<p>NOTE 1 Except in circuits CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS in J.4 a), linear interpolation is permitted between the nearest two points, the calculated minimum CLEARANCES being rounded up to the next higher 0,1 mm increment.</p> <p>NOTE 2 The values in parentheses are applicable only if manufacturing is subjected to a quality control programme, (an example for such a programme is given in annex M). In particular, DOUBLE and REINFORCED INSULATION shall be subjected to ROUTINE TESTS for dielectric strength.</p> <p>NOTE 3 Compliance with a CLEARANCE value of 8,4 mm or greater for circuits not CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS is not required if the CLEARANCE path is</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– entirely through air; or</li><li>– wholly or partly along the surface of an insulation of material group I (CTI.600);</li></ul> <p>and the insulation involved passes a dielectric strength test according to 10.3, using</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– an a.c. test voltage whose r.m.s. value is equal to 1,06 times the peak OPERATING VOLTAGE; or</li><li>– a d.c. test voltage equal to the peak value of the a.c. test voltage prescribed above.</li></ul> <p>If the CLEARANCE path is partly along the surface of a material that is not material group I, the dielectric strength test is conducted across the air gap only.</p>				

Compliance is checked by measurement, taking into account annex E.

The following conditions are applicable.

Movable parts are placed in their most unfavourable positions.



*When measuring CLEARANCES from an enclosure of insulating material through a slot or opening in the enclosure, the accessible surface is considered to be conductive as if it were covered by metal foil wherever it can be touched by the test finger, according to test probe B of IEC 61032 (see 9.1.1), applied without appreciable force (see figure 3, point B).*

*When measuring CLEARANCES, the test forces of 13.3.1 are to be applied.*

Annex K  
(normative)

Impulse test generators  
(see 13.3.4 and annex J, J.5)

The circuit in figure K.1, using the component values in table K.1, is used to generate impulses, the  $C_1$  capacitor being charged initially to a voltage  $U_c$ .

The impulse test circuit for the 10/700  $\mu\text{s}$  (10  $\mu\text{s}$  rise time, 700  $\mu\text{s}$  decay time) impulse is that specified in ITU-T Recommendation K.17 to simulate lightning interference in the TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK.

The impulse test circuit for the 1,2/50  $\mu\text{s}$  (1,2  $\mu\text{s}$  rise time, 50  $\mu\text{s}$  decay time) impulse is that specified in ITU-T Recommendation K.21 to simulate transients in power distribution systems.

The impulse wave shapes are under open-circuit conditions and can be different under load conditions.

NOTE Extreme care is necessary when using these generators due to the high electric charge stored in capacitor  $C_1$ .

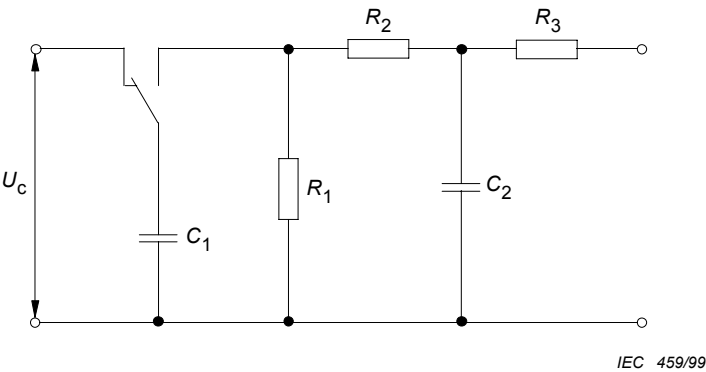


Figure K.1 – Impulse generating circuit

Table K.1 – Component values for impulse generating circuits

Test impulse	$C_1$	$R_1$	$R_2$	$C_2$	$R_3$
10/700 $\mu\text{s}$	20 $\mu\text{F}$	50 $\Omega$	15 $\Omega$	0,2 $\mu\text{F}$	25 $\Omega$
1,2/50 $\mu\text{s}$	1 $\mu\text{F}$	76 $\Omega$	13 $\Omega$	33 nF	25 $\Omega$

**Annex L**  
(normative)

**Additional requirements for electronic flash apparatus  
for photographic purposes**

The requirements of this standard, supplemented or replaced by those contained in this annex, apply to electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes.

NOTE This annex replaces IEC Publication 60491:1984.

**L.1 General<sup>1)</sup>**

*Add the following to 1.1.1:*

**L.1.1.1** This annex applies to the following electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes, having a stored energy not exceeding 2 000 J, together with associated apparatus and not intended to be subjected to dripping or splashing:

- apparatus of the single-flash type which can have more than one flash head operating at the same time;
- apparatus for the illumination of sequential photographic exposures;
- battery chargers and SUPPLY APPARATUS to be used in connection with electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes. These auxiliary units may form a part of the MAINS plug;
- accessories specified in the instruction leaflet.

This annex does not apply to stroboscopes.

NOTE 1 As long as no appropriate requirements exist for apparatus having a stored energy exceeding 2 000 J, this annex may be used, in so far as it is applicable. Additional requirements may be necessary, for example, for explosion and thermal radiation.

NOTE 2 This annex is intended to cover apparatus which can be used both in moderate and tropical climates.

NOTE 3 For the modelling lamps combined with electronic flash apparatus for photographic purposes, additional requirements may be taken from IEC 60598-2-9 or IEC 60598-2-17, as far as applicable.


**L.4 General test conditions**

*Add the following subclauses after 4.2.12:*

**L.4.2.13** *The apparatus is tested with or without connection of flash heads, capacitors and other accessories.*

**L.4.2.14** *If the apparatus can be MAINS-operated, it is switched on for a period of 4 h without flashing; if only battery or rechargeable battery is supplied, it is switched on for 30 s.*

---

<sup>1)</sup> The clause numbering of this annex refers to the clauses of this standard. 

**[A1]** Thereupon as many consecutive flashes as can be produced, with a maximum of 40, are made as quickly as possible. The rate of flashing is determined by the indicator or, if no indicator, by the measured voltage on the flash capacitors, which should be 85 % of the maximum peak voltage. The apparatus is supplied at its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.

A battery charger is connected for 4 h to a fully discharged rechargeable battery for which the charger has been designed.

Add the following dashed items to 4.3.3:

#### **L.4.3.3**

- interruption of filaments of lamps;
- short and open circuiting of glow-discharge lamps (used for indication or regulation).

Add the following item to 4.3.4:

#### **L.4.3.4**

- g) self-healing capacitors (for example, of the metallized paper type) as far as overheating is concerned.

### **L.5 Marking and instructions**

Add the following to 5.4, after Note 2:

**L.5.4** Battery chargers and SUPPLY APPARATUS shall be accompanied by an instruction leaflet in which shall be indicated the type or model number of flash apparatus with which they are to be used.

The flash apparatus shall be accompanied by an instruction leaflet in which shall be indicated the type or model number of SUPPLY APPARATUS or battery charger with which it is to be used.

NOTE It is also permitted to give this information on the apparatus themselves.

*Compliance is checked by inspection.*

### **L.7 Heating under normal operating conditions**

Add the following to 7.1.5 after the first paragraph:

**L.7.1.5** Lithium batteries shall meet the permissible temperature rise in Table 3, "Normal operating conditions", unless such batteries comply with the applicable electrical tests of 6.2.2.1 or 6.2.2.2 of IEC 60086-4. **[A1]**

## **A1 L.9 Electric shock hazard under normal operating conditions**

*Add the following to 9.1.1 after Note 1:*

**L.9.1.1** TERMINALS for the connection to the synchronizer of the camera shall not be HAZARDOUS LIVE.

*Add the following to 9.1.1.1 after the first paragraph:*

**L.9.1.1.1** *If possible, flashing is made during the measurements.*

## **L.10 Insulation requirements**

*Add the following to 10.3.2 directly before Table 5:*

**L.10.3.2** *In the case of apparatus with high frequency pulse ignition, the ignition pulse is ignored in computing the test voltage if the duration of the pulse does not exceed 1 ms.*

## **L.11 Fault conditions**

*Add the following to 11.2.6 after the first paragraph:*

**L.11.2.6** Lithium batteries shall meet the permissible temperature rise in Table 3, "Fault conditions", unless such batteries comply with all electrical tests of 6.3.2 of IEC 60086-4.

## **L.12 Mechanical strength**

*Add the following after the fourth paragraph of 12.1.3:*

**L.12.1.3** *Windows for flash tubes are excluded from the steel ball impact test.*

## **L.14 Components**

*Add the following subclause at the end of 14.6:*

**L.14.6.6** Furthermore, for MAINS SWITCHES, the characteristics of the switch, with reference to the marking, shall be appropriate for the function of the switch in the apparatus under normal conditions.

*Compliance is checked by inspection and by measurement.*

*The rated MAINS current of a flash apparatus is determined by the following formula:*

$$I_r = 1/3 \sqrt{\hat{i}_o^2 + \hat{i}_o \hat{i}_1 + \hat{i}_1^2}$$

where

$\hat{i}_o$  is the maximum MAINS current (peak value) immediately after a flash has been made. A1

$\hat{I}_1$  is the MAINS current (peak value) at the end of the re-charge period of the flash capacitor. The end of the re-charge period is determined by the indicator or, if there is no indicator, by the measured voltage on the flash capacitor, which shall be 85 % of the maximum peak voltage, the apparatus supplied at its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.

The apparatus is operated under normal operating conditions except that the apparatus is connected to its RATED SUPPLY VOLTAGE.

$\hat{I}_0$  and  $\hat{I}_1$  are measured when the apparatus is ready for flash operation and has been connected to the MAINS supply for at least 30 min.

The peak surge current is the maximum peak value of the MAINS current when the flash apparatus is switched on, after the flash capacitor has been discharged completely. Current spikes up to 100  $\mu$ s duration are disregarded.

The measured peak surge current and calculated rated MAINS current ( $I_r$ ) shall not exceed the marked current rating of the MAINS SWITCH.

## L.20 Resistance to fire

Add the following to 20.1:

**L.20.1 c)** A trigger coil circuit for discharge purposes in a flash apparatus is not considered to be a POTENTIAL IGNITION SOURCE.  $\hat{A}_1$

## Annex M (informative)

### Examples of requirements for quality control programmes

NOTE This annex gives examples of requirements for quality control programmes as specified in 13.3 and annex J for reduced CLEARANCES.

#### M.1 Reduced CLEARANCES (see 13.3)

A manufacturer wishing to use reduced CLEARANCES permitted by 13.3 and annex J should implement a quality control programme for those features of the construction listed in table M.1. This programme should include specific quality controls for the tools and materials that affect CLEARANCES.

The manufacturer should also identify and plan the protection and, where applicable, installation processes which directly affect quality and should ensure that these processes are carried out under controlled conditions. Controlled conditions should include the following:

- documented work instructions defining process, apparatus, environment, and manner of production where the absence of such instructions would adversely affect quality, suitable working environment, compliance with reference standards or specifications and quality plans;
- monitoring and control of suitable processes and product characteristics during production and installation in the apparatus ;
- criteria for workmanship stipulated to the extent necessary in written specifications or by means of representative samples;
- records maintained for qualified processes, apparatus and personnel as appropriate.

Table M.1 provides the sampling plan for attributes and tests necessary to conform to the requirements of 13.3 and annex J. The number of samples of production parts or assemblies should be based on IEC 60410 [7] or ISO 2859-1 [20] or equivalent national standards.

**Table M.1 – Rules for sampling and inspection – Reduced CLEARANCES**

Tests	BASIC INSULATION	SUPPLEMENTARY INSULATION	REINFORCED INSULATION
CLEARANCE <sup>a</sup>	Sampling S2 AQL 4	Sampling S2 AQL 4	Sampling S2 AQL 4
Dielectric strength test <sup>b</sup>	No test	No test	ROUTINE TEST one failure requires evaluation for cause
<p><sup>a</sup> To minimise test and inspection time, it is permitted to replace measurement of CLEARANCES by measurement of breakdown voltage. Initially the breakdown voltage is established for ten samples for which the correct CLEARANCE measurements have been confirmed. The breakdown voltage of subsequent parts or assemblies is then checked against a lower limit equal to the minimum breakdown voltage of the initial ten samples minus 100 V. If breakdown occurs at this lower limit, a part or assembly is considered a failure unless direct measurement of the CLEARANCE conforms to the requirement.</p> <p><sup>b</sup> The dielectric strength test for REINFORCED INSULATION should consist of one of the following alternatives:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– six impulses of alternating polarity, using a 1,2/50 µs impulse (see annex K) with a magnitude equal to the peak of the test voltage in table 5 (see 10.3.2);</li> <li>– a three cycle pulse of a.c. power frequency with a magnitude equal to the test voltage in table 5 (see 10.3.2);</li> <li>– six impulses of alternating polarity, using 10 ms d.c. impulses with a magnitude equal to the peak of the test voltage in table 5 (see 10.3.2).</li> </ul>			



## **Annex N** (informative)

### **ROUTINE TESTS**

#### **INTRODUCTION**

The tests given in this annex are intended to reveal, as far as safety is concerned, unacceptable variations in material or manufacture. These tests do not impair the properties and the reliability of the apparatus, and should be made by the manufacturer on each apparatus during or at the end of the production.

In general, more tests, such as repetition of TYPE TESTS and sampling tests, have to be made by the manufacturer to ensure that every apparatus is in conformity with the sample that withstood the TYPE TEST of this standard, according to experience gained by the apparatus manufacturer.

The manufacturer may use a test procedure which is better suited to his production arrangements and may make the tests at an appropriate stage during production, provided it can be proved that apparatus which withstand the tests carried out by the manufacturer provide at least the same degree of safety as apparatus that withstand the tests specified in this annex.

NOTE Generally, an appropriate quality assurance system should be employed, for example according to the ISO 9000 series [21].

The following rules are given as an example for ROUTINE TEST:

For ROUTINE TEST reference is made to EN 50333.

#### **N.1 Tests during the production process**

##### **N.1.1 Correct polarity and connection of components or subassemblies**

If incorrect polarity or connection of components or subassemblies might result in a safety hazard, the correct polarity and connection of these components or subassemblies should be checked by measurement or inspection.

##### **N.1.2 Correct values of components**

If incorrect values of components might result in a safety hazard, the correct value of these components should be checked by measurement or inspection.

##### **N.1.3 Protective earthing connection of screens and metal barriers**

For CLASS I apparatus with a screen or metal barrier (see 8.5) between HAZARDOUS LIVE parts and TERMINALS regarded as ACCESSIBLE (see 8.4) or ACCESSIBLE conductive parts respectively, the continuity of the protective earthing connection should be checked as late as possible during the production process between the screen or metal barrier and

- the protective earthing contact of the MAINS plug or appliance inlet, or
- the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL in case of a PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS.

The test current applied for 1 s to 4 s should be in the order of 10 A a.c., derived from a source having a no-load voltage not exceeding 12 V.

The measured resistance should not exceed

- 0,1  $\Omega$  for apparatus with a detachable power supply cord,
- 0,2  $\Omega$  for apparatus with a non-detachable power supply cord.

NOTE Care should be taken that the contact resistance between the tip of the measuring probe and the metal parts under test does not influence the test results.

#### **N.1.4 Correct position of internal wiring**

If incorrect position of internal wiring might impair the safety, the correct position of internal wiring should be checked by inspection.

#### **N.1.5 Correct fit of internal plug connections**

If incorrect fit of internal plug connections might impair the safety, the correct fit of internal plug connections should be checked by inspection or manual test.

#### **N.1.6 Safety relevant markings inside the apparatus**

The legibility of markings relevant to safety inside the apparatus, for example with regard to fuse-links, should be checked by inspection.

#### **N.1.7 Correct mounting of mechanical parts**

If incorrect mounting of mechanical parts might impair the safety, the correct mounting should be checked by inspection or manual test.

### **N.2 Tests at the end of the production process**

The following tests should be made on the apparatus when completely assembled and just before packing.

#### **N.2.1 Dielectric strength test**

The insulation of the apparatus should be checked by the following tests. In general, these tests are considered to be sufficient.

An a.c. test voltage of substantially sine-wave form, having MAINS frequency, or a d.c. test voltage or a combination of both with a peak value specified in table N.1, is applied between the MAINS supply TERMINALS connected in parallel and:

- TERMINALS regarded as ACCESSIBLE (see 8.4), and
- ACCESSIBLE conductive parts respectively,

which may become HAZARDOUS LIVE in the event of an insulation fault as a result of incorrect assembly.

NOTE 1 TERMINALS regarded as ACCESSIBLE and ACCESSIBLE conductive parts may be connected together during the dielectric strength test.

Table N.1 – Test voltage

Application of test voltage	Test voltage V (peak) a.c. or d.c.	
	Rated MAINS voltage ≤150	Rated MAINS voltage >150
BASIC INSULATION	1 130 (800 r.m.s.)	2 120 (1 500 r.m.s.)
DOUBLE OR REINFORCED INSULATION	2 120 (1 500 r.m.s.)	3 540 (2 500 r.m.s.)

Before the test voltage is applied, intimate contact should be made with the specimen.

Initially, not more than half of the prescribed test voltage is applied, then it is raised with a steepness not exceeding 1 560 V/ms to the full value which is held for 1 s to 4 s.

NOTE 2 A steepness of 1 560 V/ms corresponds to the steepness of a sine-wave with a MAINS frequency of 60 Hz.

During the test, MAINS SWITCHES and functional switches, if any, CONDUCTIVELY CONNECTED TO THE MAINS, should be in the on-position and it should be secured by suitable means so that the test voltage is completely effective.

No flash-over or breakdown should occur during the test. The test voltage source should be provided with a current sensing (over-current) device which, when activated, gives an indication that the test has been failed. The test voltage source should still deliver the prescribed voltage until current tripping occurs.

NOTE 3 The tripping current should not exceed 100 mA.

NOTE 4 Tripping of the current sensing device is regarded as a flashover or breakdown.

## N.2.2 Protective earthing connection

For CLASS I apparatus, the continuity of the protective earthing connection should be checked between the protective earthing contact of the MAINS plug or appliance inlet, or the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL in case of a PERMANENTLY CONNECTED APPARATUS, and

- the ACCESSIBLE conductive parts, including TERMINALS regarded as ACCESSIBLE (see 8.4), which should be connected to the PROTECTIVE EARTHING TERMINAL, and
- the protective earthing contact of socket-outlets respectively, if provided to deliver power to other apparatus.

The test current applied for 1 s to 4 s should be in the order of 10 A a.c., derived from a source having a no-load voltage not exceeding 12 V.

The measured resistance should not exceed

- 0,1  $\Omega$  for apparatus with a detachable power supply cord,
- 0,2  $\Omega$  for apparatus with a non-detachable power supply cord.

NOTE Care should be taken that the contact resistance between the tip of the measuring probe and the conductive parts under test does not influence the test results.

### **N.2.3 Safety relevant markings on the outside of the apparatus**

The legibility of safety relevant markings on the outside of the apparatus, for example with regard to the supply voltage, should be checked by inspection.

## Annex ZA (normative)

### Normative references to international publications with their corresponding European publications

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

NOTE Where an international publication has been modified by common modifications, indicated by (mod), the relevant EN/HD applies.

<u>Publication</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>EN/HD</u>	<u>Date</u>
-	-	Audio, video and similar electronic apparatus – Routine electrical safety testing in production	EN 50333	2001
IEC 60027	series	Letter symbols to be used in electrical technology	HD 60027	series
IEC 60038	2002	IEC standard voltages	-	-
IEC 60068-2-6 + corr. March	1995 1995	Environmental testing Part 2: Tests - Test Fc: Vibration (sinusoidal)	EN 60068-2-6	1995
IEC 60068-2-32	1975	Environmental testing Part 2: Tests - Test Ed: Free fall	EN 60068-2-32 <sup>1)</sup>	1993
IEC 60068-2-75	1997	Environmental testing Part 2: Tests - Test Eh: Hammer tests	EN 60068-2-75	1997
IEC 60068-2-78	2001	Environmental testing Part 2: Tests – Test Cab: Damp heat, steady state	EN 60068-2-78	2001
IEC 60085	2004	Thermal evaluation and classification of electrical insulation	EN 60085	2004
IEC 60086-4	2000	Primary batteries Part 4: Safety of lithium batteries	EN 60086-4	2000
IEC 60112	2003	Method for determining the comparative and the proof tracking indices of solid insulating materials under moist conditions	EN 60112	2003
IEC 60127	series	Miniature fuses	EN 60127	series
IEC 60167	1964	Methods of test for the determination of the insulation resistance of solid insulating materials	HD 568 S1	1990

<sup>1)</sup> EN 60068-2-32 includes A2:1990 to IEC 60068-2-32.

<u>Publication</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>EN/HD</u>	<u>Date</u>
IEC 60216	series	Electrical insulating materials - Properties of thermal endurance	HD 611 EN 60216	series series
IEC 60227 (mod) <sup>2)</sup>	series	Polyvinyl chloride insulated cables of rated voltages up to and including 450/750 V	-	-
IEC 60245 (mod) <sup>3)</sup>	series	Rubber insulated cables – Rated voltages up to and including 450/750	-	-
IEC 60249-2	series	Base materials for printed circuits Part 2: Specifications	EN 60249-2	series
IEC 60268-1	1985	Sound system equipment Part 1: General	HD 483.1 S2 <sup>4)</sup>	1989
IEC 60317	series	Specifications for particular types of winding wires	EN 60317	series
IEC 60320	series	Appliance couplers for household and similar general purposes	EN 60320	series
IEC 60335-1 (mod) A1	2001 2004	Safety of household and similar electrical appliances Part 1: General requirements	EN 60335-1 A1 + A11	2002 2004 2004
IEC 60384-1 (mod)	1999	Fixed capacitors for use in electronic equipment Part 1: Generic specification	EN 60384-1	2001
IEC 60384-14 A1	1993 1995	Fixed capacitors for use in electronic equipment Part 14: Sectional specification: Fixed capacitors for electromagnetic interference suppression and connection to the supply mains	EN 132400 <sup>5)</sup>	1994
IEC 60417	data-base	Graphical symbols for use on equipment	-	-
IEC 60454	series	Specifications for pressure-sensitive adhesive tapes for electrical purposes	EN 60454	series
IEC 60529 A1	1989 1999	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)	EN 60529 + corr. May A1	1991 1993 2000
IEC 60664-1 + A1 + A2	1992 2000 2002	Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems Part 1: Principles, requirements and tests	EN 60664-1	2003

<sup>2)</sup> The HD 21 series, which is related to, but not directly equivalent with the IEC 60227 series, applies instead.

<sup>3)</sup> The HD 22 series, which is related to, but not directly equivalent with the IEC 60245 series, applies instead.

<sup>4)</sup> HD 483.1 S2 includes A1:1988 to IEC 60268-1.

<sup>5)</sup> EN 132400 is related to, but not directly equivalent to IEC 60384-14.

<u>Publication</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>EN/HD</u>	<u>Date</u>
IEC 60664-3	2003	Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems Part 3: Use of coatings to achieve insulation coordination of printed board assemblies	EN 60664-3	2003
IEC 60691	2002	Thermal links – Requirements and application guide	EN 60691	2003
IEC 60695-2-2	1991	Fire hazard testing Part 2: Test methods Section 2: Needle-flame test	EN 60695-2-2	1994
IEC 60695-11-10 A1	1999 2003	Fire hazard testing Part 11-10: Test flames - 50 W horizontal and vertical flame test methods	EN 60695-11-10 A1	1999 2003
IEC 60707	1999	Flammability of solid non-metallic materials when exposed to flame sources – List of test methods	EN 60707	1999
IEC 60730 (mod)	series	Automatic electrical controls for household and similar use	EN 60730	series
IEC 60825-1 + corr. December A1 A2	1993 1994 1997 2001	Safety of laser products Part 1: Equipment classification, requirements and user's guide	EN 60825-1 + corr. February A1 A2 + A2/corr. April	1994 1995 2002 2001 2004
IEC 60851	series	Winding wires – Test methods	EN 60851	series
IEC 60884	series	Plugs and socket-outlets for household and similar purposes	-	-
IEC 60885-1	1987	Electrical test methods for electric cables Part 1: Electrical tests for cables, cords and wires for voltages up to and including 450/750 V	-	-
IEC 60906	series	IEC system of plugs and socket-outlets for household and similar purposes	-	-
IEC 60950 (mod) + corr. January	1999 2000	Safety of information technology equipment	EN 60950 + corr. February	2000 2002
IEC 60990	1999	Methods of measurement of touch-current and protective conductor current	EN 60990	1999
IEC 60998-2-2 (mod)	2002	Connecting devices for low-voltage circuits for household and similar purposes Part 2-2: Particular requirements for connecting devices as separate entities with screwless-type clamping units	EN 60998-2-2	2004

<u>Publication</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>EN/HD</u>	<u>Date</u>
IEC 60999-1	1999	Connecting devices – Safety requirements for screw-type and screwless-type clamping units Part 1: General requirements and particular requirements for clamping units for conductors from 0,2 mm <sup>2</sup> up to 35 mm <sup>2</sup> (included)	EN 60999-1	2000
IEC 61032	1997	Protection of persons and equipment by enclosures - Probes for verification	EN 61032	1998
IEC 61051-2	1991	Varistors for use in electronic equipment Part 2: Sectional specification for surge suppression varistors	-	-
IEC 61058-1 + A1 (mod)	2000 2001	Switches for appliances Part 1: General requirements	EN 61058-1	2002
IEC/TR2 61149	1995	Guide for safe handling and operation of mobile radio equipment	-	-
IEC 61260	1995	Electroacoustics – Octave-band and fractional-octave-band filters	EN 61260	1995
IEC 61293	1994	Marking of electrical equipment with ratings related to electrical supply – Safety requirements	EN 61293	1994
IEC 61558-1 (mod) A1	1997 1998	Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar Part 1: General requirements and tests	EN 61558-1 A1 + A11 + corr. April	1997 1998 2003 2003
IEC 61558-2-17	1997	Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar Part 2-17: Particular requirements for transformers for switch mode power supplies	EN 61558-2-17	1997
IEC 61965	2003	Mechanical safety of cathode ray tubes	EN 61965	2003
IEC 62087	2002	Methods of measurement for the power consumption of audio, video and related equipment	EN 62087	2003
IEC 62151	2000	Safety of equipment electrically connected to a telecommunication network	-	-
IEC Guide 104	1997	The preparation of safety publications and the use of basic safety publications and group safety publications	-	-
ISO 261	1973	ISO general purpose metric screw threads - General plan	-	-



<u>Publication</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>EN/HD</u>	<u>Date</u>
ISO 262	1973	ISO general purpose metric screw threads - Selected sizes for screws, bolts and nuts	-	-
ISO 306	1994	Plastics - Thermoplastic materials - Determination of Vicat softening temperature (VST)	EN ISO 306 <sup>6)</sup>	1996
ISO 7000	1989	Graphical symbols for use on equipment - Index and synopsis	-	-
ITU-T Recommendation K17	1988	Tests on power-fed repeaters using solid- state devices in order to check the arrangements for protection from external interference	-	-
ITU-T Recommendation K21	1996	Resistibility of telecommunication equipment installed in customer's premises to overvoltages and overcurrents	-	-

---

<sup>6)</sup> EN ISO 306 is superseded by EN ISO 306:2004, which is based on ISO 306:2004.

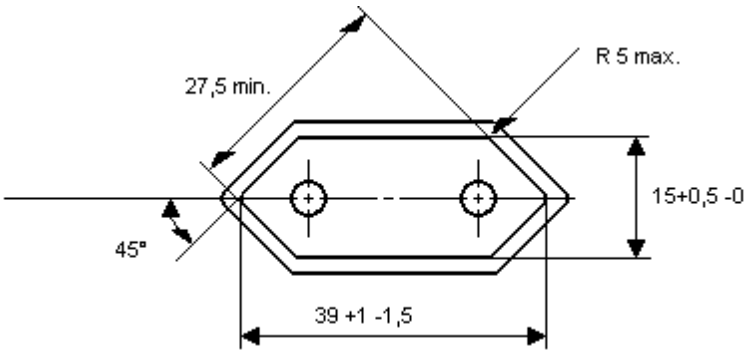
**Annex ZB**  
 (normative)

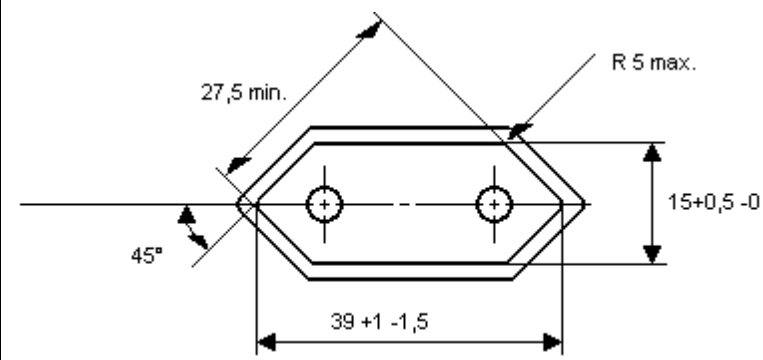
**Special national conditions**

**Special national condition:** National characteristic or practice that cannot be changed even over a long period, e.g. climatic conditions, electrical earthing conditions. If it affects harmonization, it forms part of the European Standard or Harmonization Document.

For the countries in which the relevant special national condition apply these provisions are normative, for other countries they are informative.

Clause	Special national condition
2.6.1	<p><b>Denmark</b></p> <p>The following is added:</p> <p>Certain types of CLASS I apparatus, see 15.1.1, may be provided with a plug not establishing earthing continuity when inserted in Danish socket-outlets</p> <p><i>Justification:</i>            Heavy Current Regulations, Section 107</p>
	<p><b>Norway</b></p> <p>To the second paragraph the following is added:</p> <p>In Norway, due to the IT power distribution system used, the a.c. MAINS supply voltage is considered to be equal to the line-to-line voltage, and will remain 230 V in case of a single earth fault.</p> <p><i>Justification:</i>            Based on a use in Norway of an IT power distribution system where the neutral is not provided</p>
13.3.1	
15.1.1	<p><b>Denmark</b></p> <p>To the first paragraph the following is added:</p> <p>In Denmark, supply cords of single phase appliances having a rated current not exceeding 13 A shall be provided with a plug according to the Heavy Current Regulations Section 107-2-D1.</p> <p>Appliances of CLASS I provided with socket-outlets with earth contact or which are intended to be used in locations where protection against indirect contact is required according to the wiring rules shall be provided with a plug in accordance with the Heavy Current Regulations, Section 107-2-D1 standard sheet DK 2-1a.</p>

Clause	Special national condition
<p><b>15.1.1</b> continued</p>	<p><b>Denmark (continued)</b></p> <p>To the second paragraph the following is added:</p> <p>Socket outlets intended for providing power to CLASS II apparatus with a rated current of 2,5 A shall have the following dimensions:</p>  <p>Dimensions in mm</p> <p>Other dimensions shall be in compliance with the Heavy Current Regulations, Section 107-2-D1, Standard Sheet DKA 1-3 for portable socket-outlets. Shutters are not required</p> <p>To the third paragraph the following is added:</p> <p>Mains socket-outlets with earthing contact shall be in compliance with Heavy Current Regulations Section 107-2-D1, Standard sheet DK 1-3a, DK 1-5a or DK 1-7a</p> <p><i>Justification:</i> Heavy Current Regulations, Section 107</p>
<p><b>15.1.1</b></p>	<p><b>Ireland</b></p> <p>Apparatus which is fitted with a flexible cable or cord shall be provided with a plug in accordance with Statutory Instrument 525: 1997, "13 A Plugs and Conversion Adapters for Domestic Use Regulations: 1997.</p> <p><i>Justification:</i> SI 525: 1997</p>
<p><b>15.1.1</b></p>	<p><b>Norway</b></p> <p>Mains socket-outlets mounted on CLASS II apparatus shall comply with the specifications given in CEE Publ. 7 as far as applicable, with the following amendments:</p> <p>§ 8 Dimensions</p> <p>a 2,5 A 250 V two-pole socket-outlets for electronic apparatus shall comply with the enclosed Standard Sheet I.</p>

Clause	Special national condition
15.1.1 continued	<p><b>Norway (continued)</b></p> <div><p>STANDARD SHEET I</p><p>2,5 A/250 V SOCKET-OUTLET FOR ELECTRONIC APPLIANCES OF CLASS II</p><p>Dimensions in mm</p><p>Other dimensions according to CEE Publication 7 Standard Sheet I "Portable Single-Way Socket-Outlets".</p></div> <p>§ 24 Mechanical strength</p> <p>a 2,5 A, 250 V socket-outlets for CLASS II electronic apparatus are tested as specified in 12.1.3 of EN 60065. Also the protecting rim shall be tested</p> <p><i>Justification:</i> Act of 24 May 1929 relating to supervision of electrical installation (TEA 1929/FEL 1998).</p> <p><b>United Kingdom</b></p> <p><b>15.1.1</b> Apparatus which is fitted with a flexible cable or cord and is designed to be connected to a mains socket conforming to BS 1363 by means of that flexible cable or cord and plug shall be fitted with a "standard plug" in accordance with Statutory Instrument 1768: 1994: The Plugs and Sockets etc. (Safety) Regulations 1994, unless exempted by those Regulations.</p> <p>NOTE "Standard plug" is defined in SI 1768:1994 and essentially means an approved plug conforming to BS 1363 or an approved conversion plug.</p> <p><i>Justification:</i> SI 1768: 1994</p>

Clause	Special national condition
<b>J.2</b>	<p><b>Norway</b></p> <p>After Table J.1 the following is added:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">In Norway, due to the IT power distribution system used, the a.c. MAINS supply voltage is considered to be equal to the line-to-line voltage, and will remain 230 V in case of a single earth fault.</p> <p><i>Justification:</i> Based on a use in Norway of an IT power distribution system where the neutral is not provided</p>

Clause	Special national condition
<b>Annex B</b>	<p>All subclauses given below are subclauses of IEC 62151 (ref. corrigenda 1 and 2 to IEC 62151).</p> <p><b>Subclause 4.1.1 (corrigendum 2):</b></p> <p><b>Add</b> after the first paragraph:</p> <p>NOTE In <b>Finland, Norway</b> and <b>Sweden</b>, CLASS I equipment which is intended for connection to the building installation via a non-industrial plug or a non-industrial appliance coupler, or both and in addition is intended for connection to other equipment or a network shall, if safety relies on connection to protective earth or if surge suppressors are connected between the network terminals and ACCESSIBLE parts, has a marking stating that the equipment must be connected to an earthed mains socket-outlet.</p> <p>The marking text in the applicable countries shall be as follows:</p> <p>In Finland: "Laite on liitettävä suojamaadoituskoskettimilla varustettuun pistorasiaan"</p> <p>In Norway: "Apparatet må tilkoples jordet stikkontakt"</p> <p>In Sweden: "Apparaten skall anslutas till jordat uttag"</p> <p><b>Subclause 4.1.4 (corrigendum 1)</b></p> <p><b>Add</b> at the end of the subclause:</p> <p>NOTE In <b>Norway</b>, for requirements see 4.1.1, note and 5.3.1, note 1.</p> <p><b>Subclause 4.2.1.2 (corrigendum 1)</b></p> <p><b>Add</b> at the end of the subclause:</p> <p>NOTE 3 In <b>Norway</b>, for requirements see 5.3.1, note 1.</p> <p><b>Subclause 4.2.1.3 (corrigendum 2)</b></p> <p><b>Add</b> at the end of the subclause:</p> <p>NOTE In <b>Norway</b>, for requirements see 4.1.1, note and 5.3.1, note 1.</p> <p><b>Subclause 4.2.1.4 (corrigendum 1)</b></p> <p><b>Number</b> the existing note as NOTE 1 and <b>add</b> at the end of the subclause the following NOTE 2:</p> <p>NOTE 2 In <b>Norway</b>, for requirements see 4.1.1, note and 5.3.1, note 1.</p> <p><b>Subclause 5.3.1 (corrigendum 1)</b></p> <p><b>Add</b> after the first test specifications paragraph:</p> <p>NOTE 1 In <b>Finland, Norway</b> and <b>Sweden</b>, there are additional requirements for the insulation.</p> <p><b>Renumber</b> the existing note as NOTE 2.</p>

Clause	Special national condition
<b>Annex B</b> (continued)	<p>For additional requirements for the insulation in Finland, Norway and Sweden in NOTE 1 the following text is added between the first and the second paragraph (this text is identical to the corresponding EN 60950-1:2001):</p> <p>NOTE 1 In <b>Finland</b>, <b>Norway</b> and <b>Sweden</b>, if this insulation is solid, including insulation forming part of a component, it shall at least consist of either</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• two layers of thin sheet material, each of which shall pass the electric strength test below, or</li> <li>• one layer having a distance through insulation of at least 0,4 mm, which shall pass the electric strength test below</li> </ul> <p>If this insulation forms part of a semiconductor component (e.g. an optocoupler), there is no distance through insulation requirement for the insulation consisting of an insulating compound completely filling the casing, so that CLEARANCES and CREEPAGE DISTANCES do not exist, if the component passes the electric strength test in the accordance with the compliance clause below and in addition:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• passes the test and inspection criteria of 13.6 with an electric strength test of 10.3 using the test voltage of 1,5 kV multiplied by 1,6, and</li> <li>• is subject to routine testing for electric strength during manufacturing, using a test voltage of 1,5 kV (for performance of the test see N.2.1).</li> </ul> <p>It is permitted to bridge this insulation with a capacitor complying with EN 132400:1994, subclass Y2.</p> <p>A capacitor classified Y3 according to EN 132400:1994, may bridge this insulation under the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the insulation requirements are satisfied by having a capacitor classified Y3 as defined by EN 132400, which in addition to the Y3 testing, is tested with an impulse test of 2,5 kV defined in IEC 62151, Subclause 6.2.1;</li> <li>• the additional testing shall be performed on all the test specimens as described in EN 132400;</li> <li>• the impulse test of 2,5 kV is to be performed before the endurance test in EN 132400 in the sequence of tests as described in EN 132400.</li> </ul> <p><b>Subclause 5.3.2 (corrigendum 1)</b></p> <p><b>Add after the fourth dash:</b></p> <p>NOTE In <b>Finland</b>, <b>Norway</b> and <b>Sweden</b>, exclusions are applicable for equipment which is intended for connection to the building installation wiring using screw terminals or other reliable means, and for equipment which is intended for connection to the building installation wiring via an industrial plug and socket -outlet or an appliance coupler, or both, complying with EN 60309 or with a comparable national standard.</p>

## Annex ZC (informative)

### A-deviations

**A-deviation:** A national deviation due to regulations, the alteration of which - at least for the time being - outside the competence of the CEN/CENELEC member.

Clause	National deviation
5	<p><b>Germany</b></p> <p>The following markings are required:</p> <p>a) In case of intrinsically ionizing radiation safe cathode-ray tubes with accelerating voltages between 20 kV and 30 kV:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- On the cathode-ray tube itself the wording: Eigensichere Kathodenstrahlröhre nach Anlage III Röntgen-verordnung</li> <li>- Inside the apparatus: the maximum allowed accelerating voltage in kV, and the maximum allowed beam current in mA.</li> <li>- On the outer of the apparatus: a notice in German language that produced X-rays are sufficiently shielded by the intrinsically safe cathode-ray tube.</li> </ul> <p>b) In case of approval of the whole TV receiver with an accelerating voltage exceeding 20 kV:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- On the outer of the apparatus: the licence number .../.../.../Rö, and the following text: Die in diesem Gerät entstehende Röntgenstrahlung ist ausreichend abgeschirmt. Beschleunigungsspannung: max: ... kV.</li> <li>- Supplied with the apparatus: a copy of the "Zulassungsschein", together with the notices required there.</li> </ul> <p>c) In case of TV receivers with accelerating voltages not exceeding 20 kV: Die in diesem Gerät entstehende Röntgenstrahlung ist ausreichend abgeschirmt. Beschleunigungsspannung: max: ... kV.</p> <p><i>Justification:</i> German ministerial decree against ionizing radiation ( Röntgenverordnung), dated 1987-01-08.</p> <p>NOTE The German ministerial decree (Röntgenverordnung) is under revision.</p>

Clause	National deviation
5.1	<p><b>Italy</b></p> <p>The following requirements shall be fulfilled:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The power consumption in Watts (W) shall be indicated on TV receivers and in their instruction for use (Measurement according to EN 60555-2)</li> </ul> <p>NOTE EN 60555-2 has since been replaced by IEC 60107-1:1997.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- TV receivers shall be provided with an instruction for use, schematic diagrams and adjustments procedure in Italian language.</li> <li>- Marking for controls and terminals shall be in Italian language. Abbreviation and international symbols are allowed provided that they are explained in the instruction for use.</li> <li>- The ECC manufacturers are bound to issue a conformity declaration according to the above requirements in the instruction manual. The correct statement for conformity to be written in the instruction manual, shall be: <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Questo apparecchio è fabbricato nella CEE nel rispetto delle disposizioni del D.M. marzo 1992 ed è in particolare conforme alle prescrizioni dell'art. 1 dello stesso D.M.</p> </li> <li>- The first importers of TV receivers manufactured outside EEC are bound to submit the TV receivers for previous conformity certification to the Italian Post Ministry (PP.TT).</li> </ul> <p>The TV receivers shall have on the backcover the certification number in the following form:</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">D.M. 26/03/1992 xxxxx/xxxxx/S or T or pT</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">S for stereo</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">T for teletext</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">pT for retrofitable teletext</p> <p><i>Justification:</i>  Ministerial Decree of 26 March 1992: National rules for television receivers trade.</p> <p>NOTE The ministerial decree above contains additional, but not safety relevant requirements.</p>
14	<p><b>Sweden</b></p> <p>The following is added:</p> <p>Switches containing mercury such as thermostats, relays and level controllers are not allowed.</p> <p><i>Justification:</i>  Ordinance (1990:944) on Prohibition in Connection with Handling, Importation and Exportation of Chemical Products (Certain Cases)</p>



## Bibliography

- [1] IEC/TR3 60083:1997, *Plugs and socket-outlets for domestic and similar general use standardized in member countries of IEC*
- [2] IEC 60130 (all parts), *Connectors for frequencies below 3 MHz*  
 [C] NOTE Parts 9 and 17:1998 are harmonized as ENs (not modified). [C]
- [3] IEC 60169 (all parts), *Radio-frequency connectors*  
 [C] NOTE Partly harmonized in the EN 60169/HD 134 series (not modified). [C]
- [4] IEC 60173:1964, *Colours of the cores of flexible cables and cords*  
 [C] NOTE Harmonized as HD 27 S1:1978 (not modified). [C]
- [5] IEC 60335-2-56:1997, *Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Part 2: Particular requirements for projectors and similar appliances*  
 [C] NOTE Harmonized as EN 60335-2-56:1997 (not modified). [C]
- [6] IEC 60335-2-82:1999, *Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Part 2: Particular requirements for service machines and amusement machines*  
 [C] NOTE Harmonized as EN 60335-2-82:2000 (not modified). [C]
- [7] IEC 60410:1973, *Sampling plans and procedures for inspection by attributes*  
 [C] NOTE Harmonized as EN 61040:1992 (not modified). [C]
- [8] IEC/TR3 60664-4:1997, *Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems – Part 4: Consideration of high-frequency stress*
- [9] IEC 60695 (all parts), *Fire hazard testing*  
 [C] NOTE Harmonized as EN 60695 series (not modified). [C]
- [10] IEC 61040:1990, *Power and energy measuring detectors, instruments and equipment for laser radiation*
- [11] IEC 61558-2-1:1997, *Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar – Part 2: Particular requirements for separating transformers for general use*  
 [C] NOTE Harmonized as EN 61558-2-1:1997 (not modified). [C]
- [12] IEC 61558-2-4:1997, *Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar – Part 2: Particular requirements for isolating transformers for general use*  
 [C] NOTE Harmonized as EN 61558-2-4:1997 (not modified). [C]
- [13] IEC 61558-2-6:1997, *Safety of power transformers, power supply units and similar – Part 2: Particular requirements for safety isolating transformers for general use*  
 [C] NOTE Harmonized as EN 61558-2-6:1997 (not modified). [C]
- [14] IEC Guide 108:1994, *The relationship between technical committees with horizontal functions and product committees and the use of basic publications*
- [15] IEC Guide 109:1995, *Environmental aspects – Inclusion in electrotechnical product standards*

- [16] IEC Guide 112: 2000, *Guide on the safety of multimedia equipment*
  - [17] ISO/IEC Guide 37:1995, *Instructions for use of products of consumer interest*
  - [18] ISO/IEC Guide 51:1999, *Safety aspects – Guidelines for their inclusion in standards*
  - [19] ISO 1043-1:1997, *Plastics – Symbols and abbreviated terms – Part 1: Basic polymers and their special characteristics*
  - [20] ISO 2859-1:1999, *Sampling procedures for inspection by attributes – Part 1: Sampling schemes indexed by acceptance quality level (AQL) for lot-by-lot inspection*
  - [21] ISO 9000 (all parts), *Quality management and quality assurance standards*
  - [22] ICRP 15:1969, *Protection against ionizing radiations from external sources – Published by the International Commission on Radiological Protection*
  - [23] ITU-T Recommendation K.11:1993, *Principles of protection against overvoltages and overcurrents*
- [C] EN 50332-1:2000, *Sound system equipment: Headphones and earphones associated with portable audio equipment — Maximum sound pressure level measurement methodology and limit considerations — Part 1: General method for "one package equipment"* [C]
- [C] EN 50332-2:2003, *Sound system equipment: Headphones and earphones associated with portable audio equipment - Maximum sound pressure level measurement methodology and limit considerations - Part 2: Matching of sets with headphones if either or both are offered separately* [C]
- [A] IEC 60598-2-9:1987, *Luminaires – Part 2: Particular requirements – Section 9: Photo and film luminaires (non-professional)*  
 Amendment 1 (1993) [A]
- [C] NOTE Harmonized as EN 60598-2-9:1989 + A1:1994 (not modified). [C]
- [A] IEC 60598-2-17:1984, *Luminaires – Part 2: Particular requirements – Section 17: Luminaires for stage lighting, television and film studios (outdoor and indoor)*  
 Amendment 2 (1990) [A]
- [C] NOTE Harmonized as EN 60598-2-17:1989 + A2:1991 (not modified). [C]



---

# BSI — British Standards Institution

---

BSI is the independent national body responsible for preparing British Standards. It presents the UK view on standards in Europe and at the international level. It is incorporated by Royal Charter.

## Revisions

British Standards are updated by amendment or revision. Users of British Standards should make sure that they possess the latest amendments or editions.

It is the constant aim of BSI to improve the quality of our products and services. We would be grateful if anyone finding an inaccuracy or ambiguity while using this British Standard would inform the Secretary of the technical committee responsible, the identity of which can be found on the inside front cover.  
Tel: +44 (0)20 8996 9000. Fax: +44 (0)20 8996 7400.

BSI offers members an individual updating service called PLUS which ensures that subscribers automatically receive the latest editions of standards.

## Buying standards

Orders for all BSI, international and foreign standards publications should be addressed to Customer Services. Tel: +44 (0)20 8996 9001.  
Fax: +44 (0)20 8996 7001. Email: [orders@bsi-global.com](mailto:orders@bsi-global.com). Standards are also available from the BSI website at <http://www.bsi-global.com>.

In response to orders for international standards, it is BSI policy to supply the BSI implementation of those that have been published as British Standards, unless otherwise requested.

## Information on standards

BSI provides a wide range of information on national, European and international standards through its Library and its Technical Help to Exporters Service. Various BSI electronic information services are also available which give details on all its products and services. Contact the Information Centre.  
Tel: +44 (0)20 8996 7111. Fax: +44 (0)20 8996 7048. Email: [info@bsi-global.com](mailto:info@bsi-global.com).

Subscribing members of BSI are kept up to date with standards developments and receive substantial discounts on the purchase price of standards. For details of these and other benefits contact Membership Administration.  
Tel: +44 (0)20 8996 7002. Fax: +44 (0)20 8996 7001.  
Email: [membership@bsi-global.com](mailto:membership@bsi-global.com).

Information regarding online access to British Standards via British Standards Online can be found at <http://www.bsi-global.com/bsonline>.

Further information about BSI is available on the BSI website at <http://www.bsi-global.com>.

## Copyright

Copyright subsists in all BSI publications. BSI also holds the copyright, in the UK, of the publications of the international standardization bodies. Except as permitted under the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 no extract may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means – electronic, photocopying, recording or otherwise – without prior written permission from BSI.

This does not preclude the free use, in the course of implementing the standard, of necessary details such as symbols, and size, type or grade designations. If these details are to be used for any other purpose than implementation then the prior written permission of BSI must be obtained.

Details and advice can be obtained from the Copyright & Licensing Manager.  
Tel: +44 (0)20 8996 7070. Fax: +44 (0)20 8996 7553.  
Email: [copyright@bsi-global.com](mailto:copyright@bsi-global.com).